Contents

A-Z

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

The Ultimate Driving Machine



THE BMW 3 SERIES SEDAN.

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Information Provided by:
DEALER e-PROCESS

328i
335i

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the printed or integrated Owner's Manual are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable drive.

BMW AG

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

BMW recommends Castrol

© 2011 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English X/11, 11 09 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Information Provided by:
DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 314.

6 Notes

At a glance
12 Cockpit
16 iDrive
23 Voice activation system
26 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Controls
30 Opening and closing
45 Adjusting
55 Transporting children safely
59 Driving
70 Displays
86 Lamps
91 Safety
104 Driving stability control systems
109 Driving comfort
134 Climate control
141 Interior equipment
148 Storage compartments

Driving tips
156 Things to remember when driving
159 Loading
162 Saving fuel

Navigation
168 Navigation system

Entertainment
188 Tone
190 Radio
198 CD/multimedia

Communication
220 Business mobile phone preparation package
228 Professional mobile phone preparation package
238 Office
247 Contacts
250 ConnectedDrive

Mobility
260 Refueling
262 Fuel
263 Wheels and tires
272 Engine compartment
274 Engine oil
276 Coolant
277 Maintenance
279 Replacing components
290 Breakdown assistance
296 Care

Reference
302 Technical data
306 Short commands of the voice activation system
314 Everything from A to Z

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any questions, your service center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: bmwusa.com.

Symbols

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

♲ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, equipment is also described and illustrated that is not available in your vehicle, e.g. because of the selected optional equipment or the country-specific variants.

This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

For options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently than shown in the illustrations.

Status of the Owner's Manual

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, re-

Information Provided by: DEALER EFFECTIVE

quires suitable maintenance and repair methods.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and Accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW. When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle. BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship. BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW. BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants. Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers. Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

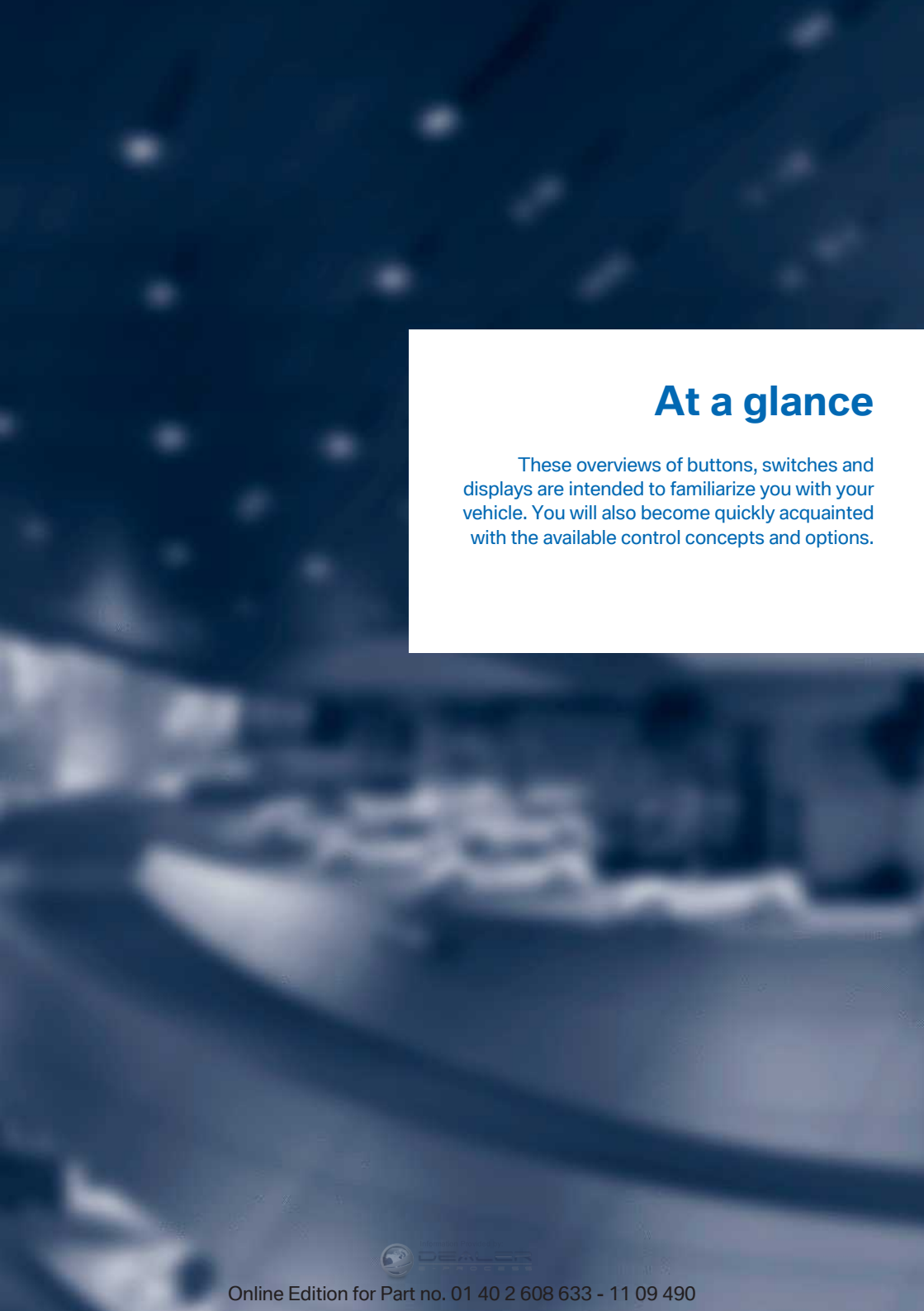
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.

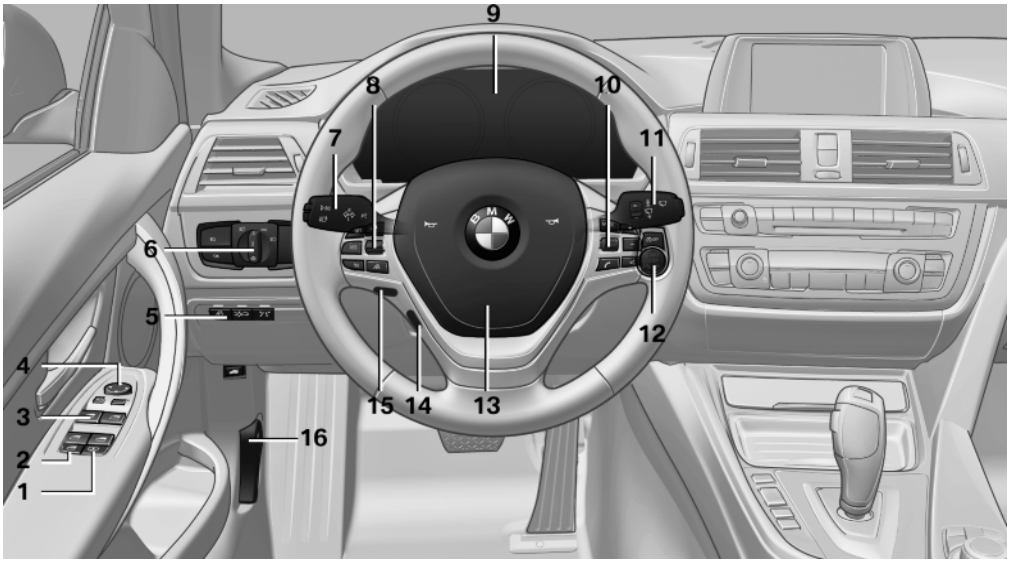
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Cockpit

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

All around the steering wheel



1 Roller sunblinds 43

2 Rear window safety switch 42

3 Power windows 41

4 Exterior mirror operation 52

5 Driver assistance systems

- Active Blind Spot Detection 101
- Collision warning 115
- Lane departure warning 99

6 Lamps

- Front fog lamps 89
- Parking lamps 86
- Low beams 86

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Automatic headlamp control 87

Daytime running lights 87

Adaptive light control 88

High-beam Assistant 88



Instrument lighting 89

7 Steering column stalk, left



Turn signal 64



High beams, headlamp flasher 64



High-beam Assistant 88



Roadside parking lamps 87



Computer 81

8 Steering wheel buttons, left



Store speed 119



Resume speed 120



Cruise control on/off, interrupting 119



Active Cruise Control on/off, interrupting 109



Increase distance 111



Reduce distance 111

9 Instrument cluster 70

10 Steering wheel buttons, right



Entertainment source



Volume



Voice activation 23



Business mobile phone preparation package 220

Professional mobile phone preparation package 228

11 Steering column stalk, right



Windshield wipers 65



Rain sensor 65



Clean the windshields and headlamps 66

12 

Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 60



Auto Start/Stop function 61

13 Horn

14 

Steering wheel heating 53

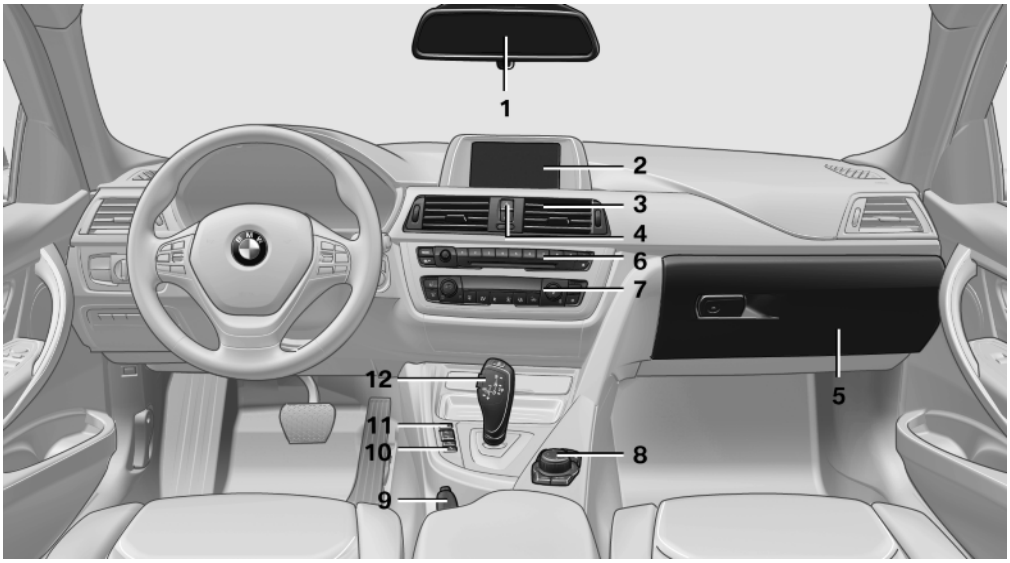
15 Adjust the steering wheel 53

16 Unlock hood 273

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

All around the center console



1 Headliner 15
2 Control Display 16
3 Ventilation 139
4 Hazard warning system 290
Central locking system 33
5 Glove compartment 148
6 Radio 190
CD/multimedia 198
7 Climate control 134
8 Controller with buttons 16
9 Parking brake 63
10 PDC Park Distance Control 121
Backup camera 123
Parking assistant 130
Surround View 123
11 Driving Experience Switch 106
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 104
12 Transmission selector lever 67 67

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

All around the headliner



1	SOS	Emergency Request 290	4		Reading lamps 90
2		Glass sunroof 43	5		Interior lamps 90
3	PASS AIR BAG OFF	Indicator lamp, front passenger airbag 93			

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

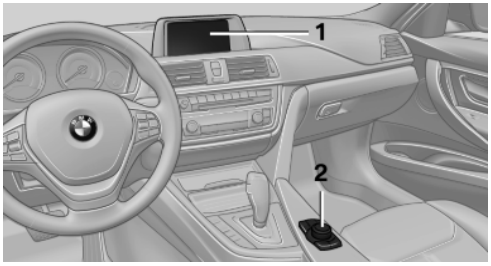
The iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

Using the iDrive during a trip

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.◂

Controls at a glance

Controls



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and create the settings.

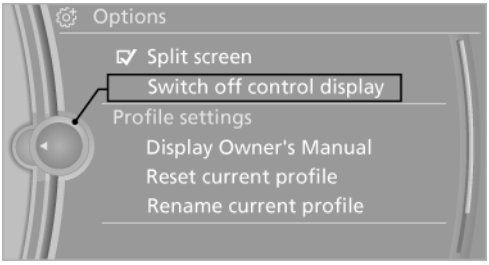
Control Display

Notes

- To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
- Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

Switching off

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"



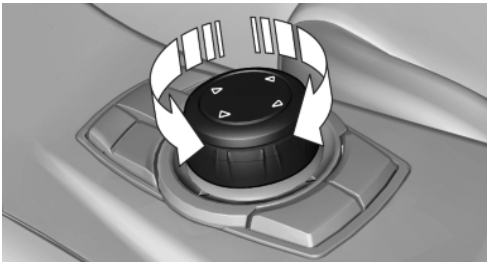
Switching on

Press the controller again to switch the screen back on.

Controller with navigation system

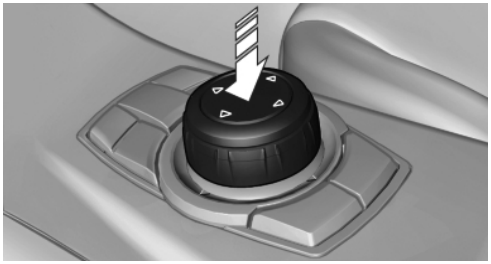
Select menu items and create settings.

1. Turn.

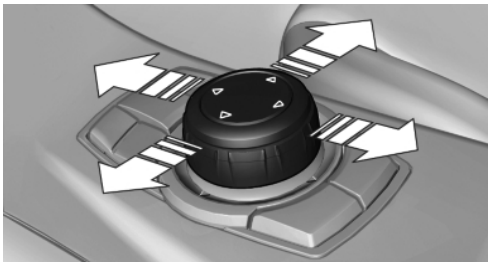


Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

2. Press.



3. Move in four directions.



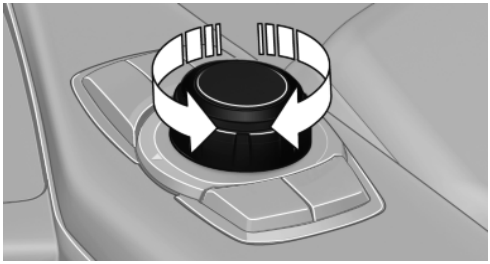
Buttons on controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
MEDIA	Opens the CD/Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu.
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

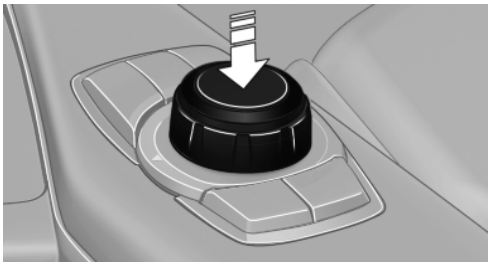
Controller without navigation system

Select menu items and create settings.

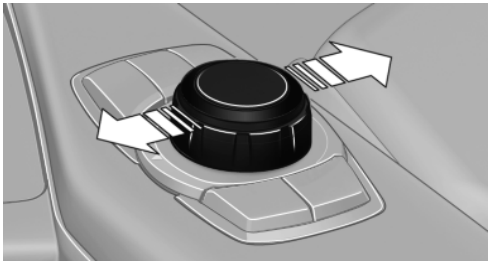
1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in two directions.



Buttons on controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
Audio	Open audio menu last listened to, switch between audio menus.
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

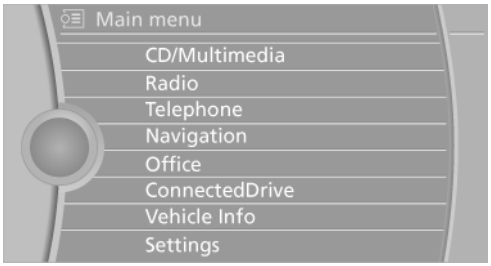
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Press the button	Function
BACK	Open previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating concept

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



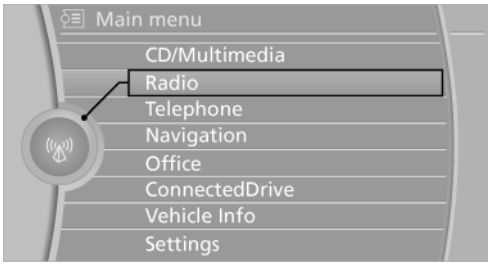
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

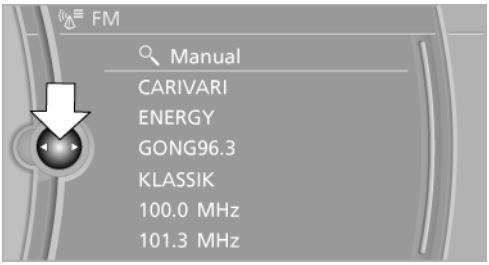
▷ Move the controller to the left.

The current panel is closed and the previous panel is displayed.

The previous panel is opened again by pressing the BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

▷ Move the controller to the right.

A new panel is opened on top of the previous display.



White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

View of an opened menu

When a menu is opened, it generally opens with the panel that was last selected in that menu. To display the first panel of a menu:

▷ Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.

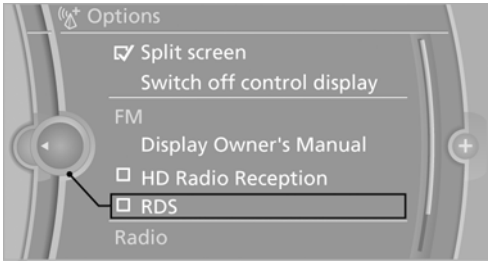
▷ Press the menu button on the controller twice.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

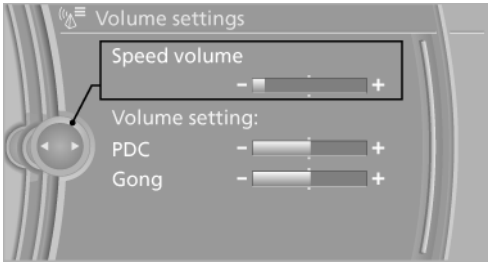
Options menu

The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".
 This area remains unchanged.
- Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
- If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

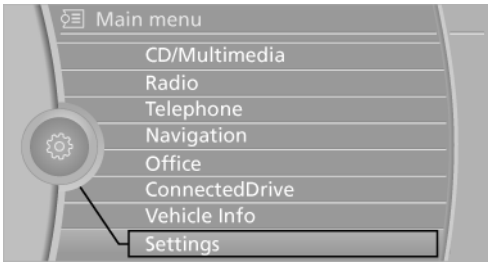
☑ The function is activated.

☐ The function is deactivated.

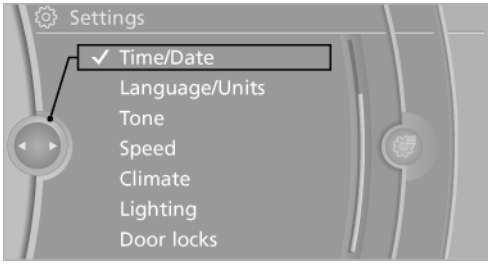
Example: setting the clock

Setting the clock

1. MENU Press the button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- Time.
- Current entertainment source.
- Sound output, on/off.
- Wireless network reception strength.
- Telephone status.
- Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped as follows.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Wireless network reception strength Symbol flashes: searching for network.
	Wireless network is not available.
	Bluetooth is switched on.
	Roaming is active.
	Text message was received.
	Check the SIM card.
	SIM card is blocked.
	SIM card is missing.
	Enter the PIN.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	Music collection.
gracenote	Gracenote® database.
	AUX-IN port.
	USB audio interface/mobile phone audio interface.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions are switched off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Split screen

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the onboard computer.

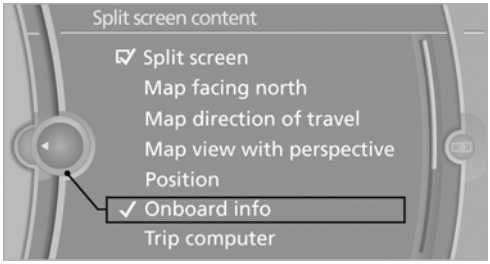
In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.



Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Without navigation system and telephone

On the buttons, only radio stations, refer to page 197, can be stored.

Saving a function

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Running a function

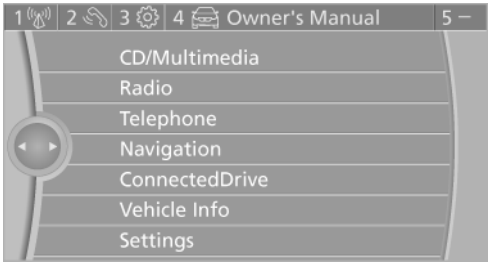
1...8 Press the button.

The function will run immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Use a finger to touch the buttons. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



- To display short information: touch the button.
- To display detailed information: touch the button for an extended period.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

Entering letters and numbers

General information

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the controller: delete the letter or number.
⌫	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.
␣	Enter a blank space.

Switching between cases, letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Move the controller up.

Without navigation system

Select the @A Aa a@ symbol.

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

The entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during the entry for which data is available.
- ▷ Destination search: town/city names can be entered using the spelling of language available on the Control Display.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRICING
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Voice activation system

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The concept

- Most functions that are displayed on the Control Display can be operated by spoken commands via the voice activation system. The system prompts you to make your entries.
- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated using the voice activation system.
- The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

Set the language, refer to page 84.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

 The command is displayed in the instrument cluster.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function in this case via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

 Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

The available commands depend on which menu is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for functions of the main menu.

Some list entries, e.g. Phone book entries, can also be selected via the voice activation system. Speak these list entries exactly as they are displayed in the respective list.

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹

For example, if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

Executing functions using short commands

Functions on the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, nearly ir-

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

respective of which menu item is currently selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.

List of short commands of the voice activation system, refer to page 306.

Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹

Additional commands for the help dialog:

- ›Help with examples‹: information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them are announced.
- ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

Example: playing back a CD

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›C D and multimedia‹

 The medium last played is played back.
4.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
5. ›C D track ...‹ e.g., CD track 4.

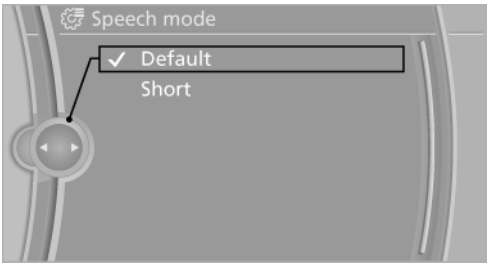
Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter version.

In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the announcements from the system are issued in an abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the setting.



Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 290, in the vicinity of the interior mirror.

Environmental conditions

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name:

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

›Station ...‹ e. g. Classic Radio station

- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. The equipment and functions that are in the vehicle are described therein.

Components of the integrated Owner's Manual

The integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or access possibilities.

Quick Reference Guide

Located in the Quick Reference is important information for the operation of the vehicle, the operation of basic vehicle functions or for what to do in the event of a flat tire. This information can also be displayed during driving.

Search by pictures

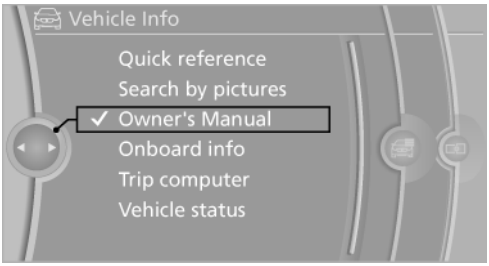
Information and descriptions based on illustrations can be searched via search by pictures. This is helpful, for example, if the description of an outfitting package that cannot be named is needed.

Owner's Manual

Information and descriptions can be searched by direct entry of a search term via the index.

Select components

1. MENU Press the button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle Info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
 - ▷ "Quick reference"
 - ▷ "Search by pictures"
 - ▷ "Owner's Manual"



Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access

Leaf through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to leaf from page to page.

 Leaf back.

 Leaf forward.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

The relevant information can be opened directly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Opening during operation via iDrive

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To change from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to switch between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press the button again to return to the function displayed last.
5. BACK Press the button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To switch back and forth repeatedly between the function displayed last and the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last, repeat steps 4 and 5. This opens a new panel every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. "Owner's Manual" Select via the iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Executing

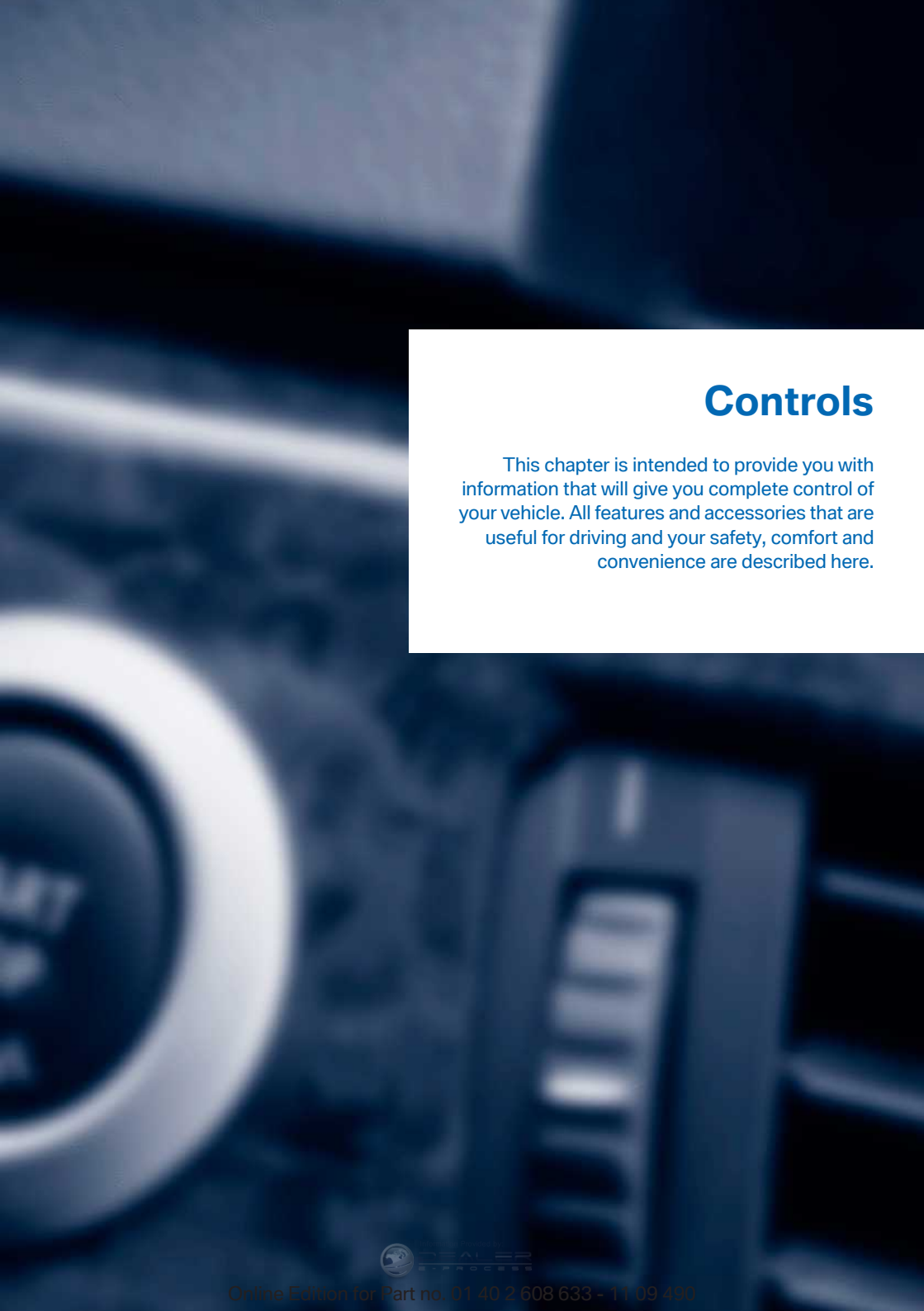
1...8 Press the button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

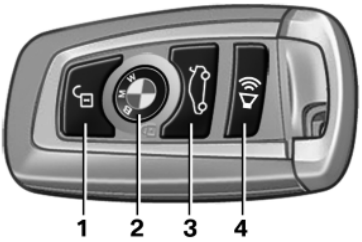
Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Remote control/key

Buttons on the remote control



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Opening the trunk lid
4 Panic mode in alarm system

General information

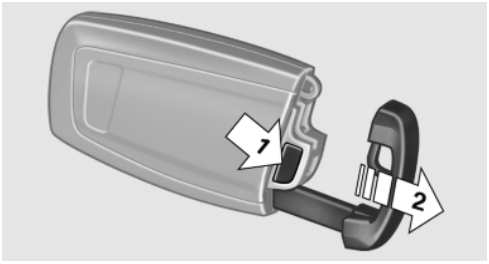
The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with keys.

Every remote control contains a replaceable battery.

The settings called up and implemented when the vehicle is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the vehicle, Personal Profile, refer to page 31.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, Service data in the remote control, refer to page 277.

Integrated key



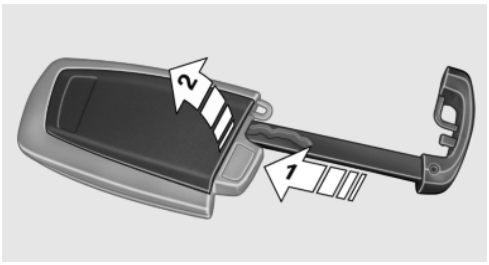
Press the button on the back of the remote control, arrow 1, and pull out the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- Driver's door.
- Glove compartment on the front passenger side.

The front passenger glove compartment contains a switch for separately securing the trunk lid, refer to page 38.

Replacing the battery



1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compartment; see arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover closed.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

New remote controls

You can obtain new remote controls from your service center.

Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be blocked by your service center.

Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources.
- Discharged battery in the remote control.
- Interference of radio transmission by mobile devices in close proximity to the remote control.
- Interference of radio transmission by charger while charging items such as mobile devices in the vehicle.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

Starting the engine in case of emergency detection of remote control



Automatic transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

Manual transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the clutch.

Personal Profile

The concept

Personal Profile concept

You can set several of your vehicle's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences.

- The settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, the profile that was last detected and called up with the remote control is used.
- Your personal settings will be recognized and called up again even if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by someone else with another remote control.

The individual settings are stored for three Personal Profiles and one guest profile.

Transmitting the settings

Your personal settings can be taken with you to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function. For more information, contact your service center.

Transmission takes place via:

- The USB interface in the glove compartment or the center console on a USB medium.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

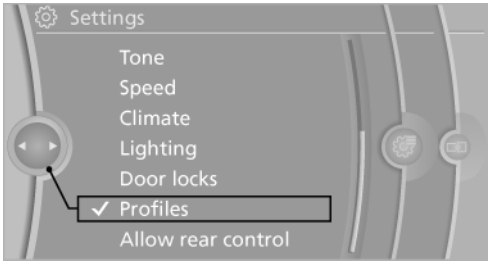
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Profile management

Opening the profiles

A different profile can be called up than the one associated with the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"



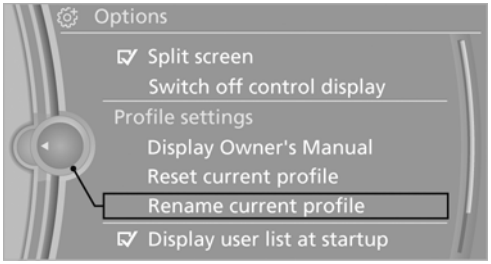
3. Select a profile.

The profile that is opened is assigned to the remote control currently in use.

Renaming profiles

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

 The current profile is selected.
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Rename current profile"



Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

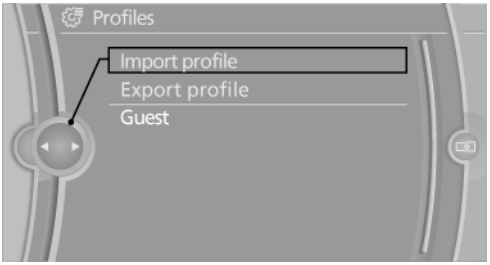
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. "Profiles"

 The current profile is selected.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Reset current profile"

Importing profiles

Existing settings and contacts are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"



4. USB interface: "USB device"

Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile and the saved contacts can be exported.

This can be useful for storing and opening personal settings, e.g. if settings are accidentally changed or deleted.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. USB interface: "USB device"

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Using the guest profile

The guest profile can be used to make individual settings without affecting the three Personal Profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. The current profile is selected.
4. Open "Guest".
5. Create the settings.

Note: the guest profile cannot be renamed.

Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start for selecting the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Display user list at startup"

Personal Profile settings

The following functions and settings can be stored in a profile.

More information on the settings can be found under:

- Active Cruise Control: collision warning.
- Exterior mirror position.
- CD/Multimedia: audio source listened to last.
- Driving Experience Switch: sport program
- Driver's seat position: automatically retrieved after unlocking.
- Programmable memory buttons: assignment.
- Head-up Display: selection, brightness, position and rotation of the display.
- Headlamp courtesy delay feature: time setting.
- Tone: tone settings.
- Automatic climate control/Automatic climate control with enhanced features: settings.
- Navigation: map views, route criteria, voice output on/off.
- Park Distance Control PDC: adjusting the signal tone volume.
- Radio: stored stations, station listened to last, special settings.
- Backup camera: selection of functions and type of display.
- Side View: selection of the display type.
- Language on the Control Display.
- Lane departure warning: last setting, on/off.
- Active Blind Spot Detection: last setting, on/off.
- Triple turn signal activation.
- Daytime running lights: current setting.
- Locking the vehicle: after a brief period or after starting to drive.

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system becomes active when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors.
- Trunk lid.
- Fuel filler flap.

Operating from the outside

- Via the remote control.
- Via the door handles of the driver's and front passenger doors.

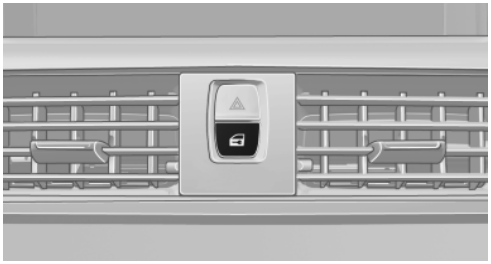
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PUBLISHER

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

The following takes place simultaneously when locking/unlocking the vehicle via the remote control:

- Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the theft protection is activated/deactivated. Theft protection prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door opener.
- The welcome lamps, interior lamps and courtesy lamps are switched on and off.
- The alarm system, refer to page 40, is armed or disarmed.

Operating from the inside



Via the button for the central locking system.

If the vehicle has been locked from inside, the fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the central locking system unlocks automatically.

The hazard warning system and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: from the outside

Using the remote control

General information

Take the remote control with you

People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◄

Unlocking

Press the button.

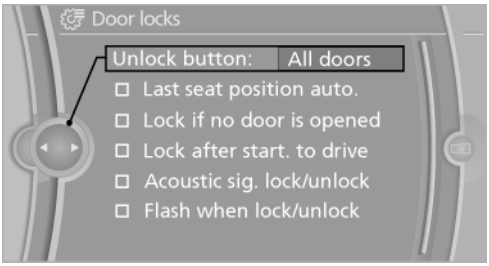
The vehicle is unlocked.

Welcome lamps, interior lamp and courtesy lamps are switched on.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button:"



4. Select the desired function:
 - "Driver's door only"

 Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
 - "All doors"

 The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Convenient opening

The remote control can be used to simultaneously open the windows and the glass sunroof.

Press and hold the button on the remote control.

The windows and the glass sunroof open.

Releasing the button stops the motion.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Locking

Press the button on the remote control.

Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◄

Switching on interior lamps and courtesy lamps

Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Opening the trunk lid

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The trunk lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

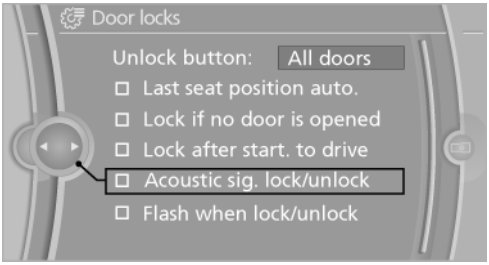
During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

In some vehicle equipment variants, the trunk lid can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first.

To avoid locking yourself out of the vehicle, do not place the remote control into the cargo area. The trunk lid is locked again as soon as it is pushed closed.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
 - ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
 - ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"



Retrieving the seat and mirror settings

The driver's seat and exterior mirror positions used last are stored for the remote control currently in use.

When the vehicle is unlocked, these positions are automatically retrieved if this function was activated.

Pinch hazard when moving back the seat

If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty. Otherwise, people can be injured or objects damaged when the seat is moved back.◄

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

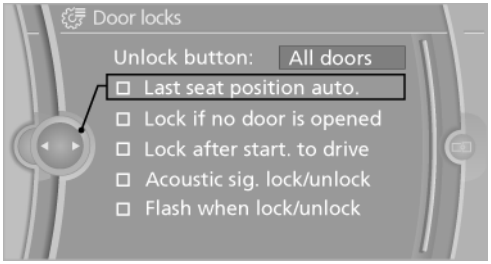
- ▷ When a seat position switch is pressed.
- ▷ When a button of the seat and mirror memory is pressed.

Activating the setting

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

3. "Last seat position auto."



Malfunction

If the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked with the remote control, the battery may be discharged or there may be interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

If this occurs, unlock or lock the vehicle at the door lock using the integrated key.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- LX8766S.
- LX8766E.
- LX8CAS.
- LX8CAS2.
- MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

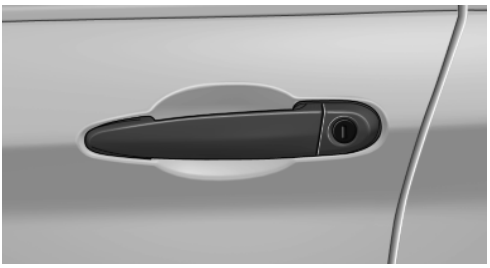
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Using the door lock

General information



Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◂

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control, or switch on the ignition, if necessary, by emergency detection of the remote control.

Only the driver's door is unlocked or locked via the door lock.

Locking the doors and trunk lid together

To lock all doors and the trunk lid at once:

1. With the doors closed, lock the vehicle using the button for the central locking system in the interior.
2. Unlock and open the driver's or front passenger door.
3. Lock the vehicle.
 - Lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock, or

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

▷ Press down the lock button of the front passenger door and close the door from the outside.

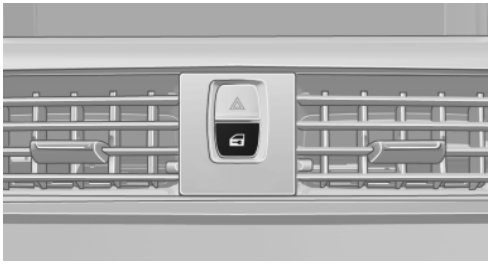
The fuel filler flap can only be locked using the remote control.

Manual operation

If an electrical malfunction occurs, lock or unlock the vehicle using the integrated key via the door lock on the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from the inside

Locking and unlocking



Pressing the buttons locks and unlocks the doors and the trunk lid when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking and opening

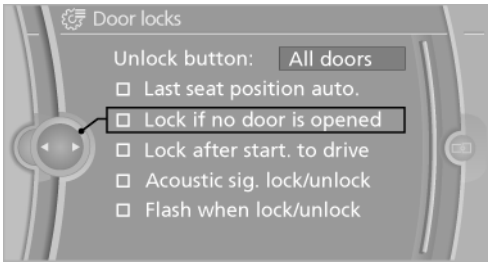
▷ Either unlock the doors together using the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or

▷ Pull the door opener twice individually on each door: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Automatic locking

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
 ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
 The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if a door is not opened.
 ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
 The vehicle locks automatically after you drive away.

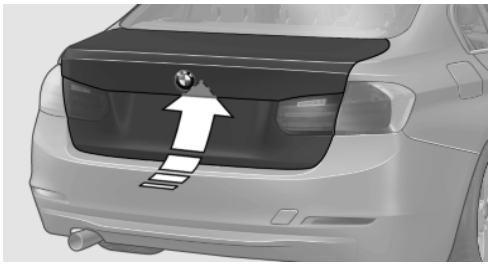


Trunk lid

Opening

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

Opening from the outside



▷ Press the button on the trunk lid.

▷  Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

▷ With Comfort Access the trunk lid opens with no-touch activation, refer to page 39.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Opening from the inside

Push the button in the driver's footwell.

If the vehicle is stationary, the trunk lid opens if it is not locked.

Closing



Recessed grips in the interior trim of the trunk lid make it easier to pull down the lid.

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the trunk lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◂

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the trunk lid is closed.◂

Locking separately

The trunk lid can be locked separately with the switch in the front passenger glove compartment.



- ▷ Trunk lid secured, arrow 1.
- ▷ Trunk lid not secured, arrow 2.

Slide the switch into the arrow 1 position. This secures the trunk lid and disconnects it from the central locking system.

When the front passenger glove compartment is locked, the tailgate cannot be accessed.

This is beneficial when the vehicle is parked using valet service. The infrared remote control can be handed out without the key.

Emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk lid unlocks.

Comfort Access

The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, e.g., in your jacket pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is nearby or in the passenger compartment.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- ▷ Unlocking of the trunk lid separately.
- ▷ Open trunk lid with no-touch activation.
- ▷ Starting the engine.

Functional requirements

- ▷ There are no external sources of interference nearby.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.

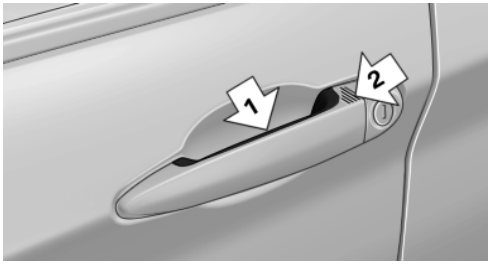
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the remote control is inside the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control

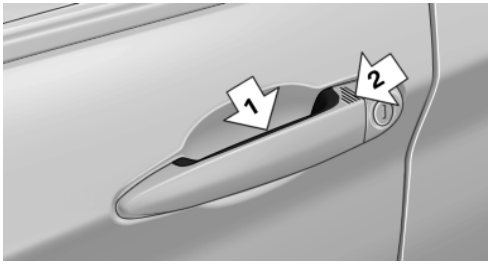
The functions can be controlled by pressing the buttons of the remote control or Comfort Access.

Unlocking



Grasp the door handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking



Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the button.

To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.

Convenient closing

Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with the finger and hold it down.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof are closed.

Monitor the closing process

Monitor the closing process to ensure that no one becomes trapped.◂

Unlocking the trunk lid separately

Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

This corresponds to pressing the button.

Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the trunk lid is closed.◂

Open trunk lid with no-touch activation

With Comfort Access, the trunk lid can be opened with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying.

A sensor detects a directed foot motion in the center of the area at the rear of the car and the trunk lid opens.

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

Do not touch vehicle

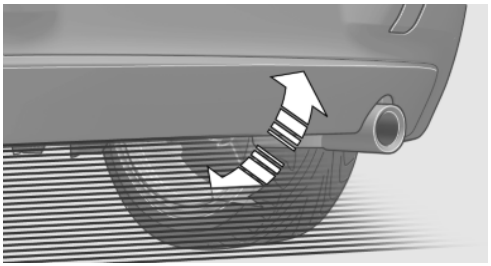
With the foot motion, make sure there is steady stance and do not touch the vehicle; otherwise, there is a danger of injury, e. g. from hot exhaust system parts.◂

1. Position in the center behind the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

2. Move foot in the direction of travel underneath the bumper and immediately back.



The trunk lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

Malfunction

Comfort Access may not function properly if it experiences interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

In this case, open or close the vehicle using the buttons on the remote control or use the integrated key in the door lock.

If there is a malfunction, open the trunk lid with the remote control button or with the button on the trunk lid.

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds to:

- Opening of a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
- Movements in the vehicle.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, e.g., during attempts to steal a wheel or when towing the car.
- Interruptions in battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly indicates tampering:

- By sounding an acoustic alarm.
- By switching on the hazard warning system.
- By flashing the daytime running lights.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

General information

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Door lock and armed alarm system

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if necessary, by emergency detection of the remote control.

Trunk lid and armed alarm system

The trunk lid can be opened using the remote control, even if the alarm system is armed.



Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

After the trunk lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again by the alarm system. The hazard warning system flashes once.

In some vehicle equipment variants, the trunk lid can only be opened using the remote control if the vehicle was unlocked first.

Panic mode



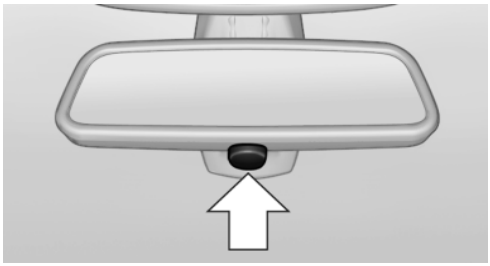
Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control.
- With Comfort Access: if you are carrying the remote control with you, pull on the door handle.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

 The system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking:

 The doors, hood or trunk lid is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.

 After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:

 The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine is started, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

 An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on car-carrying trains, at sea or on a trailer.
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Power windows

General information

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves.◀



Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

 The window opens while the switch is held.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically.

Pressing again stops the motion.

Convenient opening, refer to page 34, via the remote control.

Closing

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

▷  Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is held.

▷  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically.

Pressing the switch stops the motion.

Convenient operation, refer to page 34, via the remote control.

Convenient closing, refer to page 39, with Comfort Access.

Pinch protection

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present.◄

No window accessories

Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired.◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

For example, if there is an external danger or if ice on the windows prevents a window from closing normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

 Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

 The window closes without pinch protection.

Safety switch

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for example, from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

Switching on and off

 Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Safety switch for rear operation

Press the safety switch when transporting children in the rear; otherwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Roller sunblinds

Roller sunblind for rear window

General information

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblind for the rear window after having activated it a number of times in a row, the system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblind for the rear window cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Extending or retracting roller blind for rear window



Press the button.

Roller sunblinds for the rear side windows

Pull out the roller sunblind at the loop and hook it onto the bracket.

Do not open the window while the roller sunblind is raised.

Do not open the window while the roller sunblind is raised; otherwise, there is a risk of damage at high speeds that may result in personal injury.◄

Glass sunroof, powered

General information

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the roof and injure themselves.◄



Tilting the glass sunroof



Push switch upward briefly.

- ▷ Closed roof is tilted open.
- ▷ The opened roof closes until it is in its tilted position. The sliding visor stays completely open.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together



- ▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

 Glass sunroof and sliding visor open together as long as the switch is held down.
- ▷ Press switch back past the resistance point.

 The glass sunroof and sliding visor open automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening motion.

Analogously, the glass sunroof is closed by sliding the switch forward.

The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

Convenient operation, refer to page 34, via the remote control.

Convenient closing, refer to page 39, with Comfort Access.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately the

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRESS

middle of the opening in the roof, or from the tilted position during closing.

The glass sunroof opens again slightly.

Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the roof's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present.◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

For example, if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold.

 Pinch protection is limited and the roof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the roof closes without pinch protection.

Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the roof can only be operated to a limited extent.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the roof closes without pinch protection.

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄



Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

- ▷ Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the sunroof is completely closed.
- ▷ The roof closes without pinch protection.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PARTS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Adjusting

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- Safety belts, refer to page 48.
- Head restraints, refer to page 49.
- Airbags, refer to page 91.

Seats

General information

Do not adjust the seat while driving

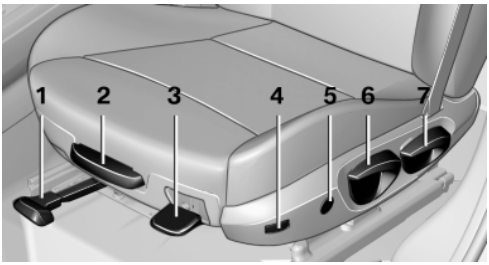
Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving, or the seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.◄

Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear

Also on the front passenger side, do not incline the backrest on the front passenger side too far to the rear during driving, or there is a risk of slipping under the safety belt in the event of an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt.◄

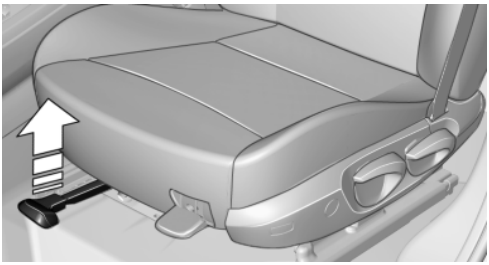
Manually adjustable seats

At a glance



1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Seat tilt
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest tilt

Forward/backward



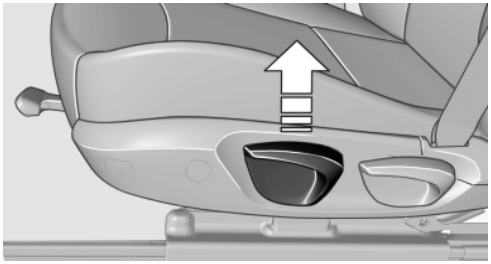
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly to make sure it engages properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Height



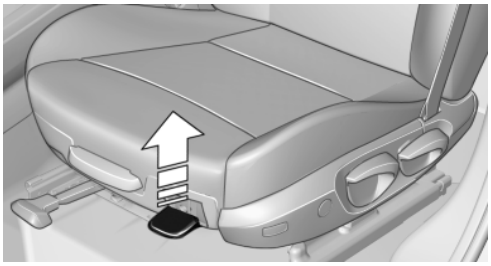
Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

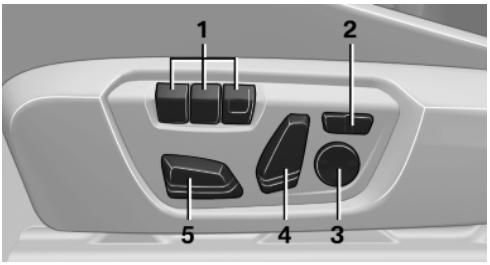
Seat tilt



Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.

Electrically adjustable seats

At a glance



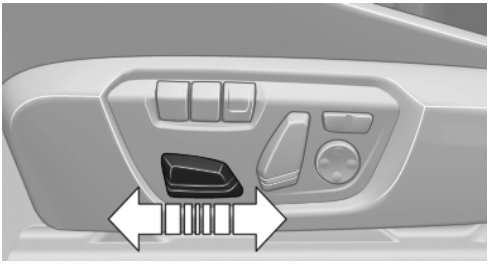
1 Seat and mirror memory
2 Backrest width
3 Lumbar support
4 Backrest tilt
5 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

Note

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the remote control currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 35, is activated for this purpose.

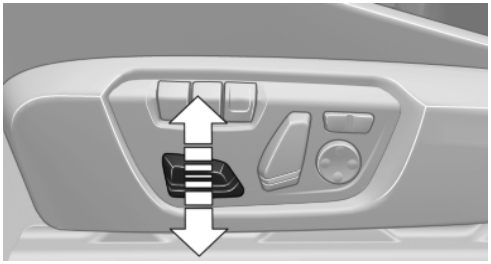
Adjustments in detail

1. Forward/back.

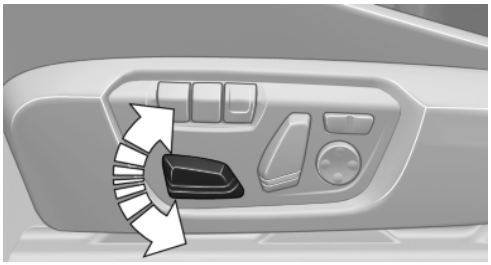


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRODUCTS

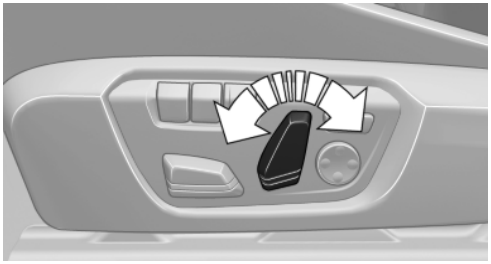
2. Height.



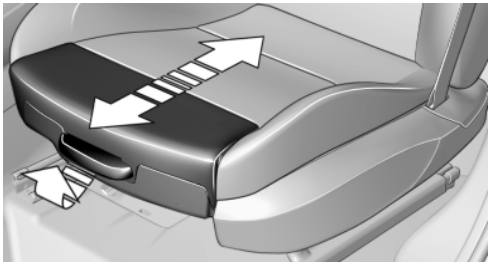
3. Seat tilt.



4. Backrest tilt.



Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.



- Press the front/rear section of the switch.

 The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the switch.

 The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width



Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.

Front seat heating



Switching on



Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the drive is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Rear seat heating



Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the drive is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Safety belts

Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has five seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

Number of safety belts

Your vehicle has been fitted with five safety belts for the safety of you and your passengers. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Notes

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving away.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

- The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.
- The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.
- The center rear seat belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.

One person per safety belt

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap.◄

Putting on the belt

Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

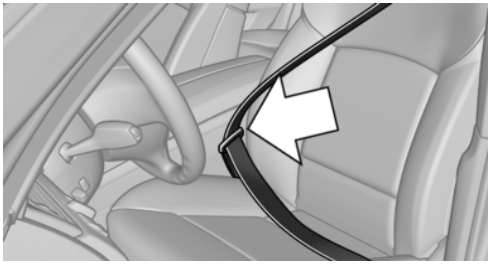
The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects, or be pinched.◄

Reduction of restraining effect

Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension across your lap; otherwise, the retention effect of the safety belt may be reduced.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Buckling the belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its reel.

Safety belt reminder for the driver's and front passenger seat

The indicator lamp flashes or lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts

In the case of strain caused by accidents or damage:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.

Checking and replacing safety belts

Have the work performed only by your service center; otherwise, it cannot be ensured that this safety feature will function properly.◄

Front head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◄

Height

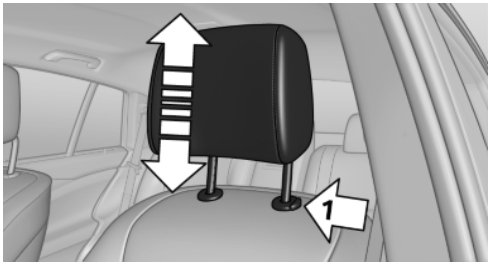
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.

Adjusting the height



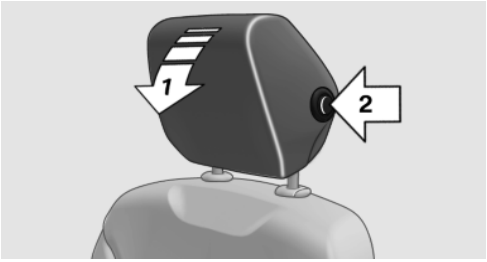
- ▷ To raise: pull.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Tilt

Three different tilt positions are available.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



- ▷ Forward: pull the top edge of the head restraint forward, arrow 1.
- ▷ Back: press the button, arrow 2. The head restraint folds as far back as possible.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

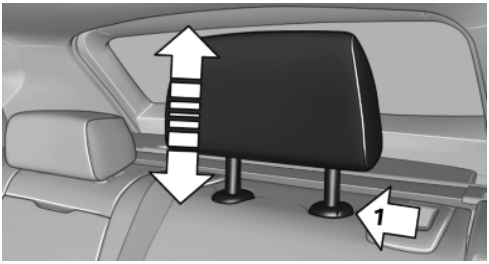
Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Adjusting the height



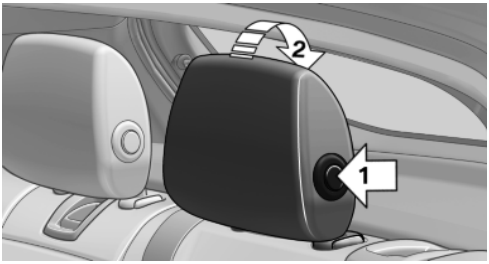
- ▷ To raise: pull.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

The center head restraint cannot be adjusted in elevation.

Folding down head restraints

Extending/retracting head restraint

Only fold down head restraint if no passengers are in the rear. Fold out retracted headrests again if passengers are being carried in the rear; otherwise, there is increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

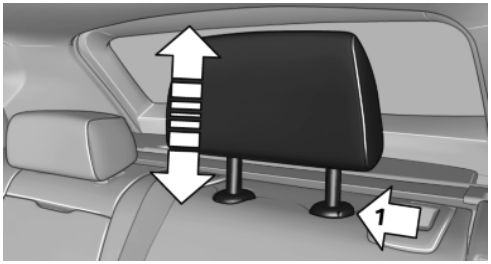


- ▷ To lower flaps: press the button, arrow 1, and press down the head restraint.
- ▷ Fold back up: pull up head restraints.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS



1. Pull the head restraint upward as far as possible.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Before transporting passengers

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable.◄

Seat and mirror memory

General information



Two different driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored and retrieved for each remote control. Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. M Press the button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2. The LED goes out.

If the M button is pressed accidentally:

M Press the button again.

The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

Do not retrieve the memory while driving

Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident.◄

Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.

The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

Safety mode

1. Close the driver's door or switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, the calling up of stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- ▷ Open and close the door or trunk lid.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

At a glance



1 Adjusting
2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Fold in and out

General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Estimating distances correctly

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident.◄

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the mirror setting is stored for the remote control in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the setting for this function is active.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the mirror changeover switch.

Adjusting electrically

The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

Saving positions

Seat and mirror memory, refer to page 51

Adjusting manually

If an electrical malfunction occurs, for example, press the edges of the mirror glass.

Automatic Curb Monitor

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass tilts downward slightly on the front passenger side. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1. Slide the mirror changeover switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage transmission position R.

Deactivating

Slide the mirror changeover switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Fold in and out

Press the button.

Possible up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

For example, this is advantageous

- In car washes.
- In narrow streets.
- For folding back mirrors that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Fold in the mirror in a car wash

Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, they could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Automatic heating

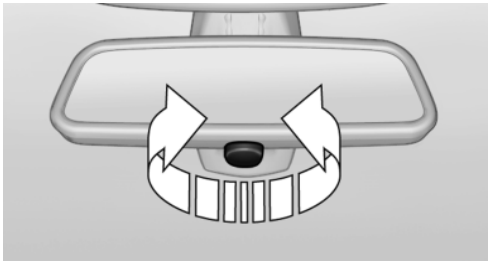
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used for control in the Interior rear view mirror, refer to page 53.

Interior rearview mirror

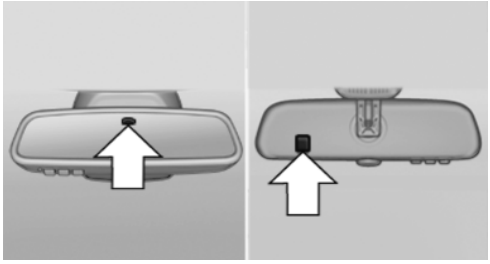
Reducing the blinding effect



From behind when driving at night: turn the knob.

Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature

The concept



Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirement

For proper operation:

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

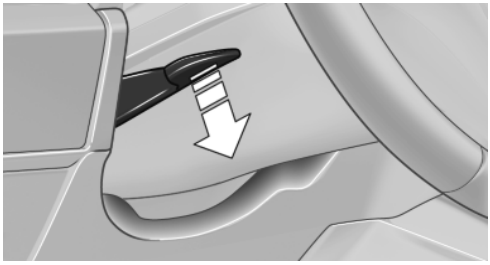
Steering wheel

General information

Do not adjust while driving

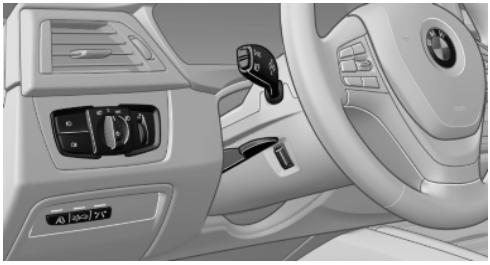
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident.◄

Adjusting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back.

Steering wheel heating



Switching on/off



Press the button.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELSA CODE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Transporting children safely

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

The right place for children

Note

Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors.◄

Children should always be in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

Transporting children in the rear

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in child restraint fixing systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint fixing system can no longer be used, due to their age, weight and size.◄

Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 93.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Installing child restraint fixing systems

Before mounting

Before mounting child restraint fixing systems, ensure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

Notes

Manufacturer's information for child restraint fixing systems

To select, mount and use child restraint fixing systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be impaired.◄

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

After installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 93.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint fixing system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest position to obtain the best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

Do not change the seat position and height after this.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Backrest width for the child seat

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced.◄

Child seat security



The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be locked against pulling out for mounting the child restraint fixing systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
2. Secure the child restraint fixing system with the belt.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull it taut against the child restraint fixing system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint fixing system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Note

Manufacturer's information for LATCH child restraint fixing systems

To mount and use the LATCH child restraint fixing systems, observe the operating and safety information from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced.◄

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

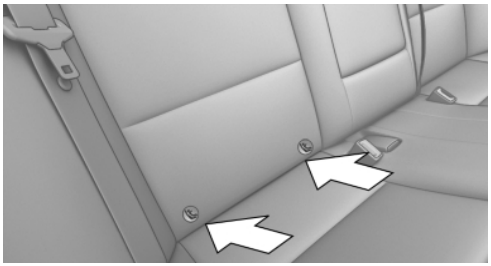
Correctly engage the lower LATCH anchors

Make sure that the lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint fixing system is resting snugly against the backrest; otherwise, the degree of protection offered may be reduced.◄

Before mounting the LATCH child restraint fixing system, pull the belt away from the child restraint fixing system.

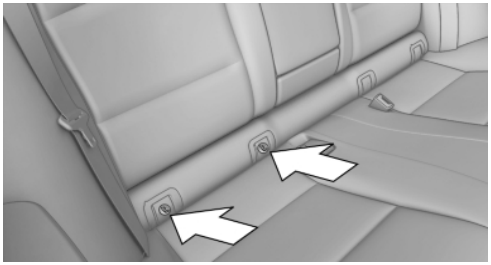
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Without a through-loading system: Position



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located in the gap between the seat and backrest.

With a through-loading system: Position



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the indicated covers.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

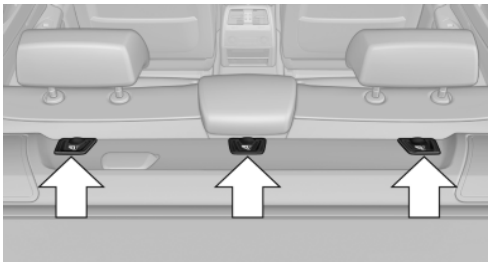
Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

Note

LATCH mounting eyes

Only use the mounting eyes for the upper LATCH retaining strap to secure child restraint fixing systems; otherwise, the mounting eyes could be damaged.◀

Mounting points



Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are two outer or three mounting points for child restraint fixing systems with a tether strap.

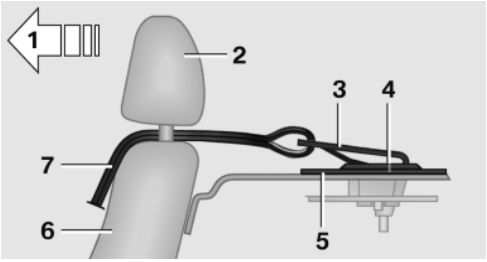
Retaining strap guide

Retaining strap

Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed over the head restraints or sharp edges and is free of twisting on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt cannot properly secure the child restraint fixing system in an accident.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



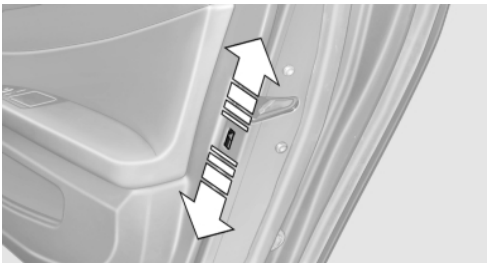
1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint.
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point/eye
5 Rear window shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Remove the mounting point cover.
2. Raise or remove head restraints.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows

Rear doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors down.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear



Press the button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 42.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Driving

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Start/Stop button

The concept



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Automatic transmission: the engine starts if the brake is depressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Manual transmission: the engine starts if the clutch is depressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on

Automatic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Manual-shift transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the clutch pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster light up for varying lengths of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition switches off automatically:

- When the vehicle is locked, if the low beams are switched on.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.
- If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

 If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off.

Ignition off

Automatic transmission: press the Start/Stop button again, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Manual-shift transmission: press the Start/Stop button again, and do not press on the clutch pedal at the same time.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◀

Ignition automatically cuts off while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is stopped:

- During locking, also with the low beams activated.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELSEWHERE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are switched off.
- When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the low beams are switched off.
- While the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, if the driver's door is open and the low beams are switched off.

When the ignition is switched off, by opening or closing the driver's door or unbuckling the driver's seat belt, the radio ready state remains active.

Radio ready state

Activate radio ready state:

- When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.
- When the engine is running: press START/STOP button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

Radio ready state switches off automatically:

- After approx. 8 minutes.
- When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

Starting the engine

General information

Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas; otherwise, breathing of exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas.◄

Unattended vehicle

Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running; doing so poses a risk of danger.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, set the parking brake and place the transmission in position P or neutral to prevent the vehicle from moving.◄

Frequent starting in quick succession

Avoid repeated futile attempts at starting the car and avoid starting the car frequently in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned, and there is the danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◄

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds.

Manual transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Automatic-Transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Engine stop

General information

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot start the engine.◄

Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◄

Before driving into a car wash

In order for the vehicle to be able to roll into a car wash, heed the information regarding Washing in automatic car washes, refer to page 296.

Manual transmission

Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Automatic-Transmission

Switching off the engine

1. Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

 The engine is switched off.

 The radio ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The concept

The automatic engine start-stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e. g., in a traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

Automatic mode

The automatic engine start/stop function is operational after each engine start.

The function is activated above a certain speed.

- Manual transmission: above 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.
- Automatic transmission: from 5 mph, approx. 9 km/h.

Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Automatic transmission:

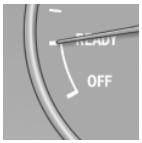
- The selector lever is in transmission position D.
- Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

The air flow of the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Display in the instrument cluster



The READY display in the tachometer signals that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Note

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- External temperature below approx. +37 °F/ +3 °C.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The passenger compartment has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- After driving in reverse.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- The transmission selector lever is in position N or S/M.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- Manual transmission:

 The clutch pedal is pressed.
- Automatic transmission:

 By releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met.

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lamps light up for varying lengths of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/ Stop button.

Note

Even if driving away was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the passenger compartment when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Automatic transmission: the transmission position is changed from D to N, R, or M/S.
- Automatic transmission: the transmission position is changed from P to N, D, R, or M/ S.
- The vehicle begins rolling.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- Excessive cooling of the passenger compartment when the heating is switched on.
- Low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for example, if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

Preventing an automatic engine stop with automatic transmission

The concept

To make it possible to drive away very quickly, such as at an intersection, the automatic engine stop can be actively prevented.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Preventing an engine stop using the brake pedal

The engine stop can be actively prevented within one second after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

- ▷ Immediately after the vehicle comes to a standstill, briefly press the brake pedal forcefully.
- ▷ Then press the brake pedal with normal braking force.

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Using the button





Press the button.

- ▷ LED comes on: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.

 The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

 The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ LED goes out: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e.g., when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

 Automatic transmission: the transmission position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via start/stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Automatic Engine Start/Stop Function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, such as when the driver is detected to be absent.

Malfunction

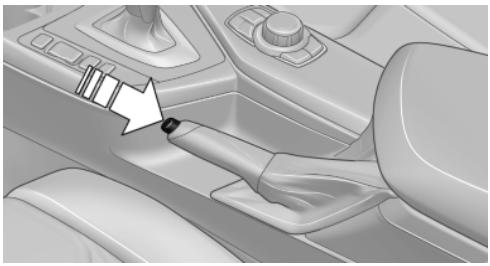
The automatic engine start/stop function no longer switches of the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

Parking brake

Applying

The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.

Releasing



Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notes

Use while driving

If on a rare occasion it is necessary to use the parking brake while driving, do not use excessive force when applying it. When using it, keep the button on the lever depressed.

Otherwise, using excessive force when applying the parking brake may cause the rear wheels to lock, resulting in fishtailing.◀

To prevent corrosion and braking control on one side only, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lamps will not light up if the parking brake is engaged.

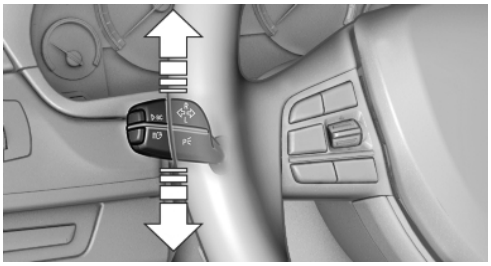
Turn signal, high beams, headlamp flasher

Turn signal

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors

During driving and during the operation of the turn signals/warning flashers, do not fold in the exterior mirror, or else the additional flasher lights in the exterior mirror do not have the prescribed position and can only be poorly detected.◀

Using turn signals



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

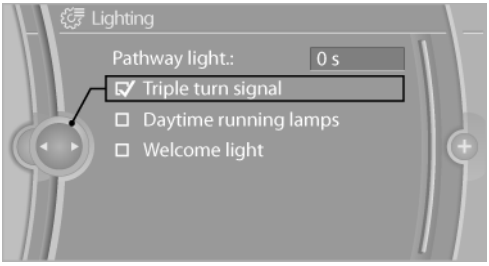
Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated:

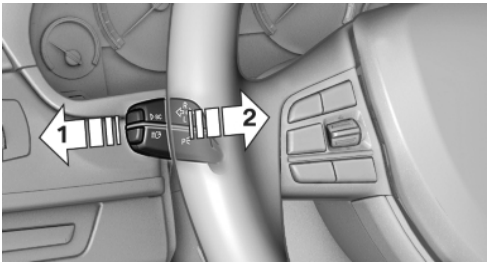
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"



Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlamp flasher



- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

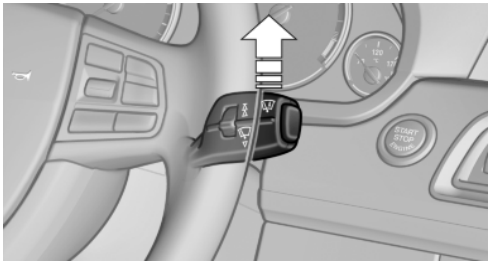
Washer/wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Do not switch on the wipers if frozen

Do not switch on the wipers if they are frozen onto the windshield; otherwise, the wiper blades and the windshield wiper motor may be damaged.◄

Switching on



Press the wiper levers up.

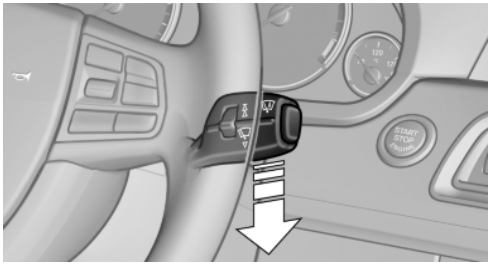
The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▷ Normal wiping speed: press up once.

 The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Fast wiping speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.

 The wipers switch to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the wiper levers down.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

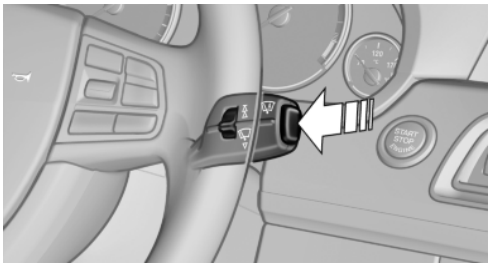
- ▷ Brief wipe: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off normal wipe: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off fast wipe: press down twice.

Intermittent operation or rain sensor

The concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

Activating/deactivating



Press the button on the wiper lever.

The LED in the steering column stalk lights up.

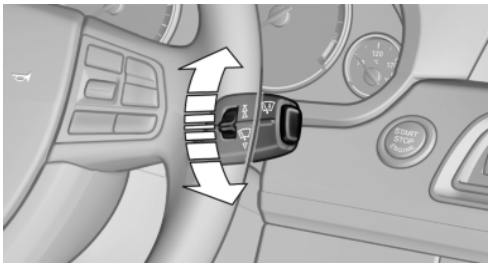
Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, damage could be caused by undesired wiper activation.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

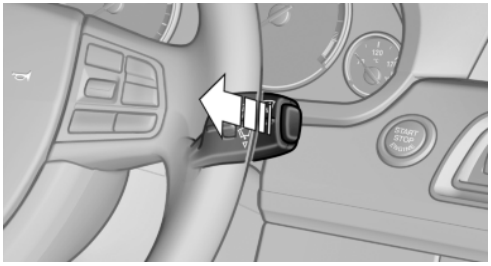
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the thumbwheel.

Clean the windshield, headlamps



Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlamps are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle lights are switched on.

Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield; otherwise, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use antifreeze.

Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; otherwise, you could damage the pump.◄

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Required when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for example.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Under frosty conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen onto the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

Fold the wipers back down

Before switching the ignition on, fold the wipers back down to the windshield; otherwise, the wipers may become damaged when they are switched on.◄

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the wiper levers down. The wipers move to their resting position and are ready for operation.

Washer fluid

General information

Antifreeze for washer fluid

Antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from sources of ignition.

Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

Follow the instructions on the container.◄

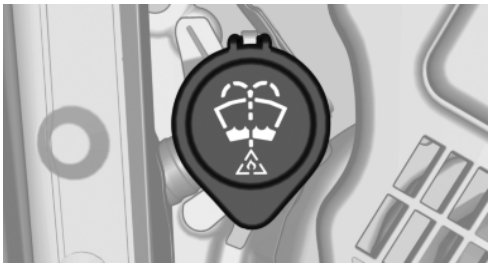
Washer fluid reservoir

Adding washer fluid

Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Otherwise, there is the danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.◄



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to maintain the correct mixing ratio.

Manual transmission

Shifting

Shifting into 5th or 6th gear

When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, push the gearshift lever to the right; otherwise inadvertent shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could lead to engine damage.◄

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance needs to be overcome.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic

Transmission positions

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

Use in automatic car washes, for example. The vehicle can roll.

When the ignition is switched off, refer to page 59, position P is engaged automatically.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

- After the engine is switched off, if the car is in radio ready state, refer to page 60, or if the ignition is switched off, refer to page 59, and if position R or D is engaged.
- With the ignition is off, if position N is engaged.
- If the safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and transmission position R or D is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that position P of the automatic transmission is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Press on the gas pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Engaging the transmission position

- Transmission position P can only be disengaged if the engine is running and the brake pedal is pressed.
- With the vehicle stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise, the shift command will not be executed: shift lock.

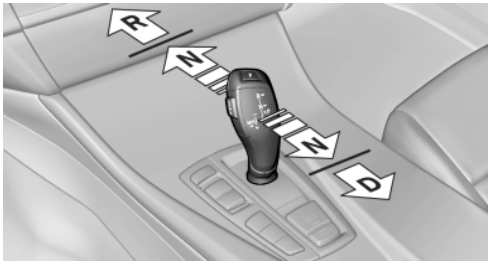
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Depress the brake until you start driving

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◄

Engaging D, R and N



Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary.

After releasing the selector lever, it returns to its center position.



Press unlock button, in order to:

- Engage R.
- Shift out of P.

Engaging P



Press button P.

Sport program DS and manual mode M/S

Activating sport program DS



Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Activating the M/S manual mode

Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Manual mode M/S: prevent automatic upshifting

Once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

For vehicles with Sport automatic transmissions, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- DSC deactivated.
- TRACTION activated.
- SPORT+ activated.

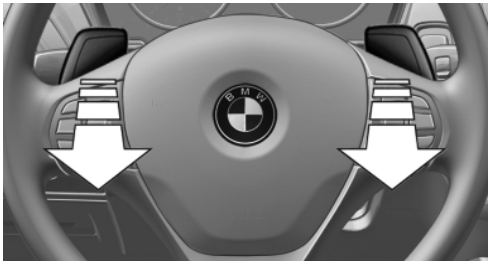
In addition, the kickdown is deactivated.

Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles for Sport automatic transmission



The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission temporarily switches to manual mode.

If the shift paddles are not used and the vehicle is not accelerated for a certain time, the system switches back into automatic mode if the selector lever is in transmission position D.

- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

The vehicle only shifts up or down at appropriate engine and road speeds, e.g., it does not shift down if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The transmission position is displayed, e.g.: P.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

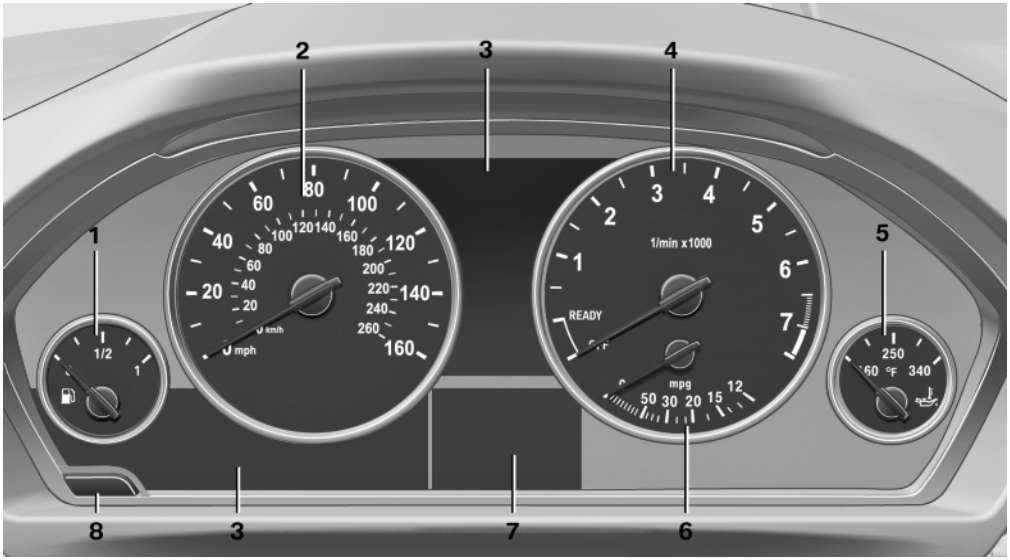
Displays

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Instrument cluster

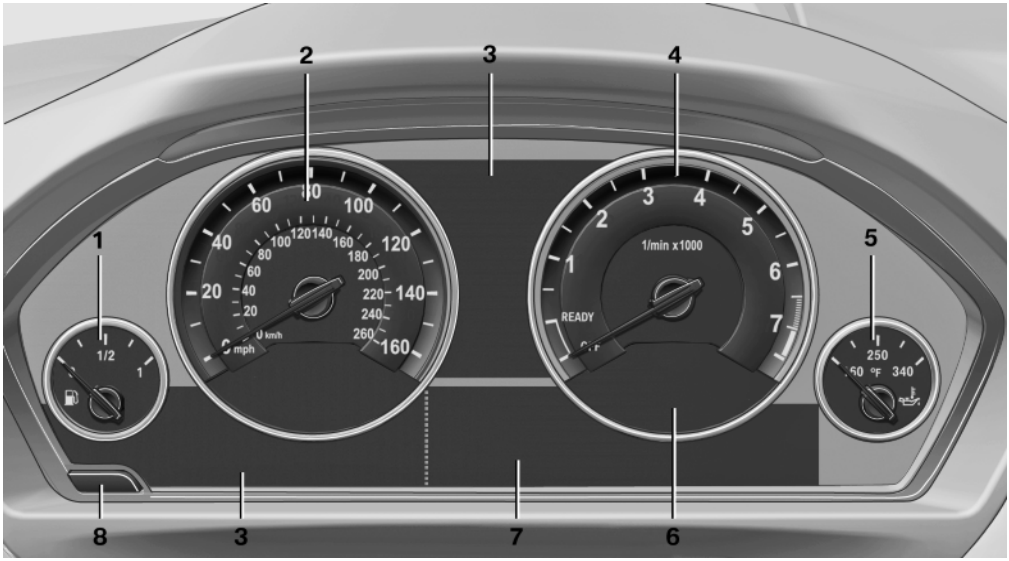
Overview, instrument cluster



1 Fuel gauge 75
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator/warning lamps 73
4 Tachometer 75
5 Engine oil temperature 75
6 Current fuel consumption 77
7 Electronic displays 72
8 Display/reset miles 76

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Overview, instrument cluster with enhanced features



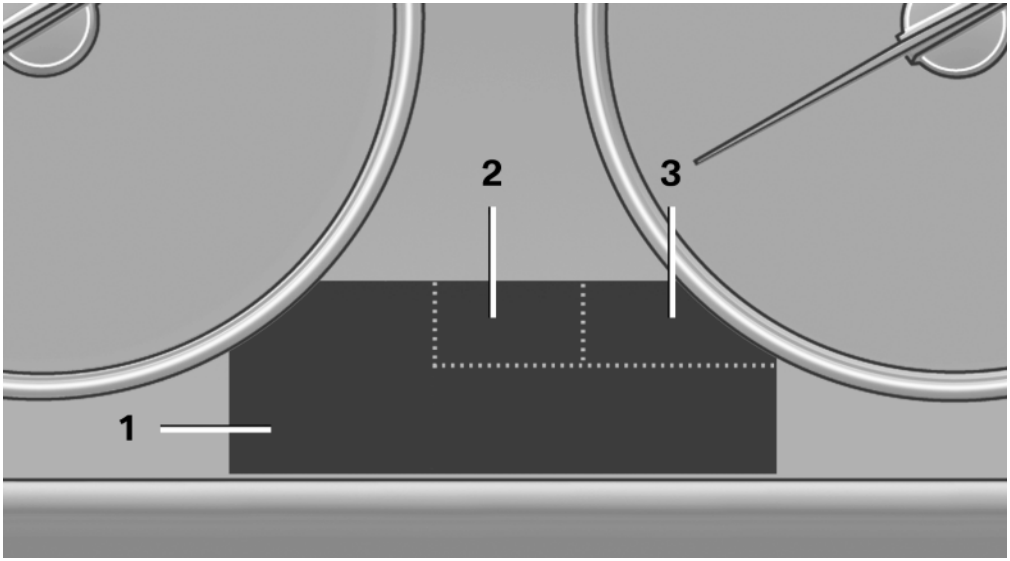
1 Fuel gauge 75
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator/warning lamps 73
4 Tachometer 75
5 Engine oil temperature 75
6 Current fuel consumption 77
7 Electronic displays 72
8 Display/reset miles 76

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Electronic displays

Overview, instrument cluster



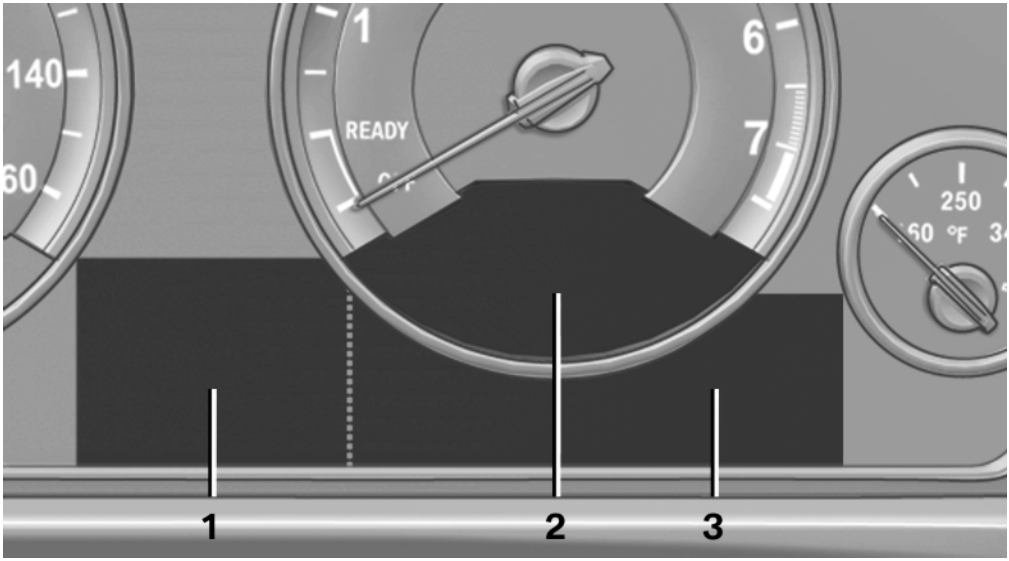
1 Messages, e.g. Check Control 73
Time 76
Date 76
External temperature 76
Selection lists 80
Service requirements 77
Miles/trip miles 76
Computer 81

2 Transmission display 69
Gear shift indicator 78

3 Status, Driving Experience Switch 106

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PARTS

Overview, instrument cluster with enhanced features



1 Time 76
External temperature 76
Date 76
Selection list, e.g., radio 80
Speed limit detection 79
Computer 81
Miles/trip miles 76
Navigation display 168

2 Energy recovery 77
Transmission display 69
Current fuel consumption 77
ECO PRO 163

3 Messages, e.g. Check Control 73
Service requirements 77

Check Control

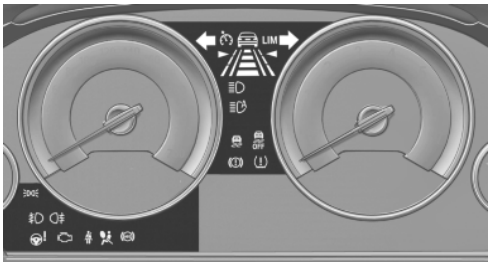
The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lamps



The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PUBLISHER

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Overview: indicator/warning lamps

Symbol	Function or system
	Turn signal
	Front fog lamps
	Rear fog lamp
	High beams
	High-beam Assistant
	Parking lamps, headlamp control
	Active Cruise Control
	Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control
	Collision warning
	Adjustable speed limit
	Cruise control
	Lane departure warning

Symbol	Function or system
	DSC Dynamic Stability Control
	DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated
	Tire Pressure Monitor Flat Tire Monitor
	Safety belts
	Airbag system
	Steering system
	Emissions
	Parking brake Brake system
	In Canadian models Parking brake Brake system
	Antilock Brake System ABS
	Antilock Brake System ABS in Canadian models
	At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored (symbol in display)

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Supplementary text messages

Addition information, such as on the cause of a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

The supplementary text of urgent messages is displayed on the Control Display automatically.

Symbols

Depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

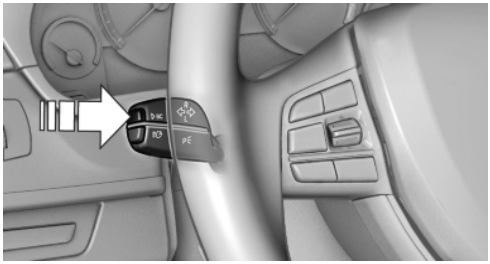
- "Owner's Manual"

 Display additional information about the Check Control message in the integrated owner's manual.
- "Service request"

 Contact the service partner.
- "Roadside Assistance"

 Contact Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

- Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

 These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.
- Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds.

 They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages that are displayed during driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

Fuel gauge



The vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 260.

Tachometer



Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Engine oil temperature



- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

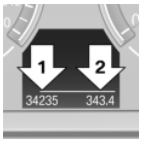
▷ Hot engine: the pointer is at the high temperature end. A Check Control message is displayed in addition.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 276.

Odometer and trip odometer



▷ Odometer, arrow 1.

▷ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

Display/reset miles



Press the knob.

▷ When the ignition is switched off, the time, external temperature and odometer are displayed.

▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

External temperature

External temperature warning



If the display drops to +37 °F/ +3 °C, a signal sounds.

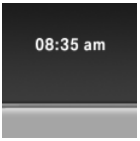
A Check Control message is displayed.

There is the increased danger of ice.

Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, there can be a risk of ice on roads. Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shady roads, for example, to avoid the increased danger of an accident.◄

Time



The time is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Setting the time and time format, refer to page 83.

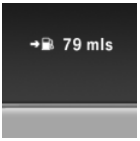
Date



The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the date and date format, refer to page 84.

Range



After the reserve range is reached:

▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.

▷ The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.

▷ When a dynamic driving style is used, such as when cornering quickly, operation of the engine is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/ 50 km, or operation of the engine is not ensured and damage may occur.◄

Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"

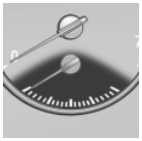
Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

3. "Additional indicators"

The range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Current fuel consumption

Instrument cluster



Displays the current fuel consumption. You can check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Instrument cluster with enhanced features



Displays the current fuel consumption. You can check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"

The bar display for the current fuel consumption is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Energy recovery



The energy of motion of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

Service requirements

The concept

The driving distance or the time to the next service is displayed briefly after the ignition is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the remote control by the service specialist.

Display

Instrument cluster



Display in the instrument cluster.

Instrument cluster with enhanced features



Display in the instrument cluster with expanded scope.

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

 Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Ensure that the vehicle date and time are set correctly.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Create the settings.
7. Confirm.

 The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Service history

Perform maintenance work at the service center and have them recorded in the vehicle data. The entries are like a service booklet of the documentation of regular maintenance.

The entered maintenance work can be displayed on the Control Display. Function is available as soon as a maintenance operation has been entered in the vehicle data.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "Service history"

 Performed maintenance operations are displayed.
5. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	Green: maintenance was performed on schedule.
OK	Yellow: maintenance was performed late.
!	Maintenance was not performed.

Gear shift indicator

The concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear in the current driving situation.

Displays

Indicators to shift up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Symbols	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is engaged.
	Shift up to fuel efficient gear.
	Shift down to fuel efficient gear.
	Shift into neutral.

Speed limit detection with No Passing Information

The concept

Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection uses a symbol in the shape of a traffic sign to display the currently detected speed limit. The camera at the base of the interior rearview mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable displays of sign gantries. Traffic signs with extra symbols, e. g. during wet road conditions, are also detected and compared with vehicle interior data, e. g. the rain sensor and are displayed depending on the situation. The system considers the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

No Passing Information

No Passing Information displays in the instrument cluster the beginnings and ends of no passing zones detected by the camera. The system accounts for only the beginnings and ends of No Passing zones marked by signs.

No display is shown:

- In countries where No Passing zones are primarily identified with road markings.
- On routes without signage.
- Where there are railroad crossings, highway markings or other situations where no signage is present, but passing would not be permitted.

Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the onboard computer. No Passing Information is displayed together with activated speed limit information.

Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Speed limit detection



- Current speed limit.
- No speed limit - for the German autobahn.
- Speed limit detection is not available.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

No Passing Information



- Start of No Passing zone.
- End of No Passing zone.
- No Passing Information not available.

No Passing Information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Information Provided by: DEALER EFFECTIVE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

System limits

Personal judgment

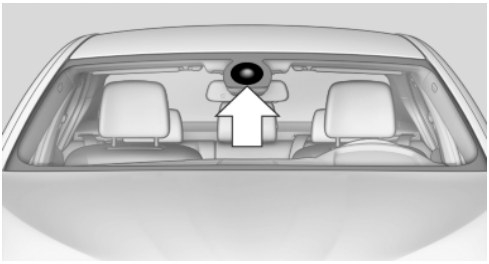
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

The system assists the driver and does not replace the human eye.◄

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- When signs are concealed by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, e.g. due to changes in the road network.
- When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

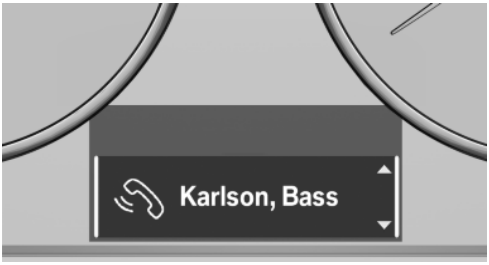
The concept

The following can be displayed or operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster:

- Current audio source.
- Programs of the Driving Experience Switch.
- Redial on telephone.
- Activation of the voice activation system.

Display

Instrument cluster

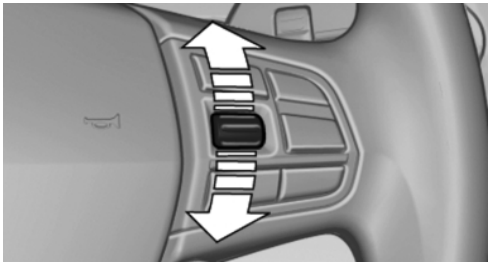


Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Instrument cluster with enhanced features



Activating a list and creating the setting

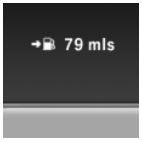


On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

Using the thumbwheel, select the desired setting and confirm it by pressing the thumbwheel.

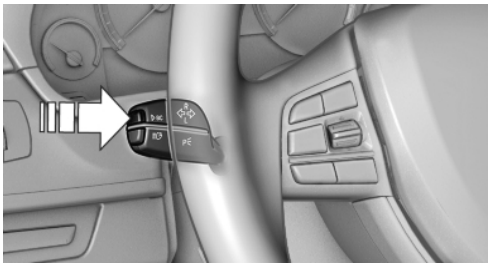
Computer

Indication in the info display



The information from the onboard computer is shown in the info display in the instrument cluster.

Calling up information on the info display



Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information on the info display:

- Range.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Date.
- Speed limit detection.
- Time of arrival

 When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- Distance to destination

 When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- Arrow view of navigation system

 When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

 When the arrow view in the Head-up Display is inactive.
- ECO PRO bonus range.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Adjusting the info display

You can select what information from the on-board computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. Select the desired displays.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

If there is only enough fuel left for less than 45 miles/80 km, the color of the display changes.

Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period during which the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated on the basis of various distances.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped do not enter into the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

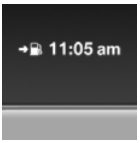
Press and hold the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Time of arrival



The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed limit detection

Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 79, function

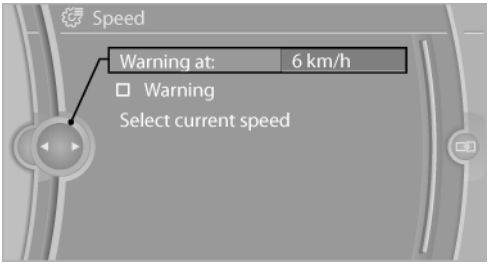
Speed limit

Display of a speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

Renewed warning if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/ 5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

 The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

Trip computer

There are two types of computer.

- "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

Resetting the trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.

 "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle comes to a standstill.



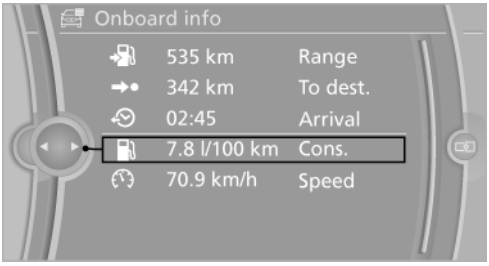
Display on the Control Display

Display the computer or trip computer on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the fuel consumption or speed

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Cons." or "Speed"



4. "Yes"

Sport displays

In the Control Display, the current values for power and torque can be displayed.

Displaying sport displays in the Control Display

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Sport displays"

Settings on the Control Display

Time

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. "Time:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

Date

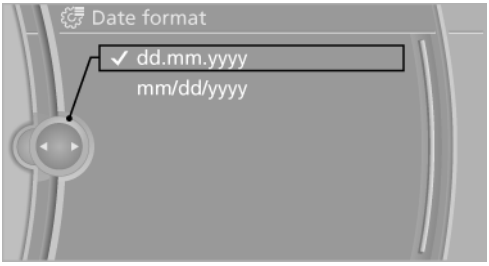
Setting the date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.



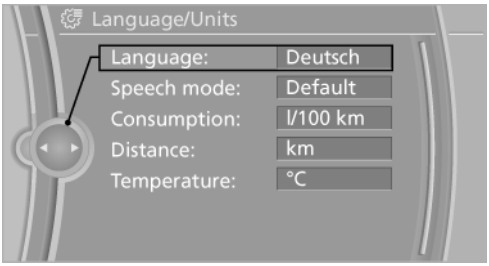
The date format is stored.

Language

Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"



4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

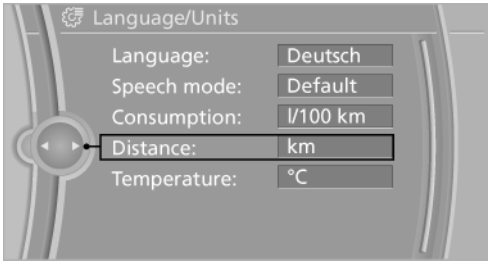
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Units of measure

Setting the units of measure

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.



4. Select the desired unit.

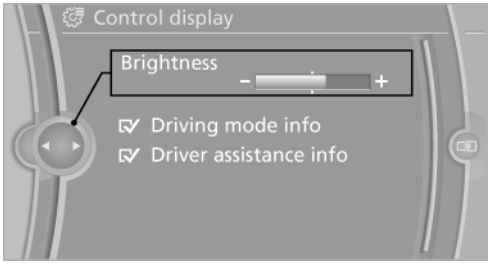
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"



4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

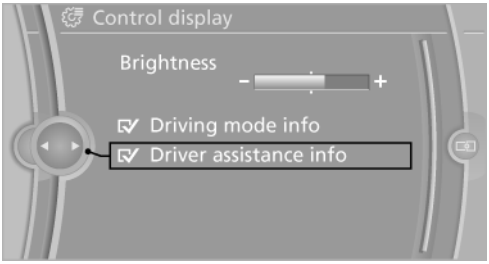
Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Assist system information

Display on the Control Display

Information on the Assist system can be displayed by activating Assist on the Control Display.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driver assistance info"



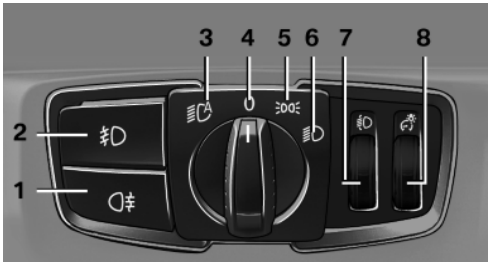
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lamps

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance



1 Rear fog lamps
2 Front fog lamps
3 Automatic headlamp control / Adaptive Light Control / high-beam Assistant / welcome lamps / daytime running lights
4 Lamps off / daytime running lights
5 Parking lamps / daytime running lights
6 Low beams / welcome lamps / High-beam Assistant
7 Headlamp range control
8 Instrument lighting

Parking lamps/low beams, headlamp control

General information

Switch position: 0,

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings:

Parking lamps

Switch position : the vehicle lamps light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lamps for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamps, refer to page 87.

Low beams

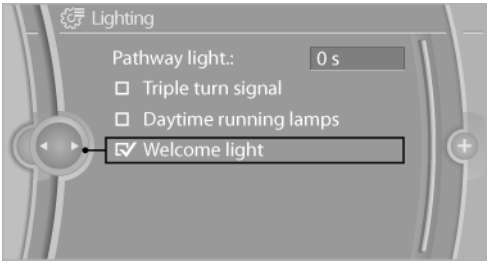
Switch position with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

Welcome lamps

When parking the vehicle, leave the switch in position or : the parking and interior lamps light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

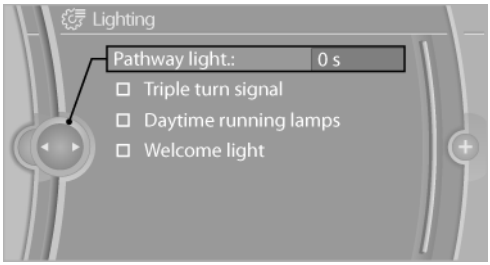
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Headlamp courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlamp flasher is switched on after the ignition is switched off.

Setting the duration

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.: s"



4. Set the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatic headlamp control

Switch position : the low beams are switched on and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lamps are switched on.

Personal responsibility

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions.

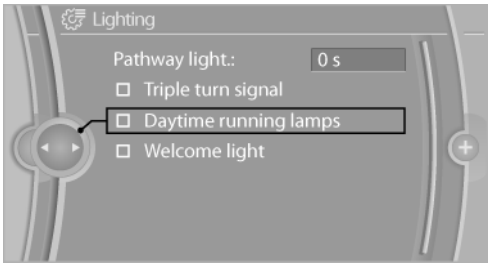
For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the lamps manually under these conditions.◀

Daytime running lights

With the ignition switched on, the daytime running lights light up in position 0, or . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lamps light up in position .

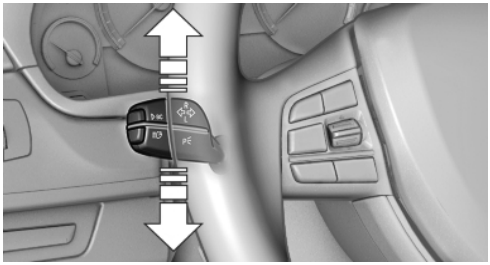
Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Roadside parking lamps



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on

With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Adaptive light control

The concept

Adaptive light control is a variable headlamp control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves, e.g., on mountainous roads or when turning, one of the two front fog lamps is switched on as a turning lamp. As a result the inside of the curve is better lighted.

Activating

Switch position with the ignition switched on.

The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When driving in reverse, only the turning lamp is active.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

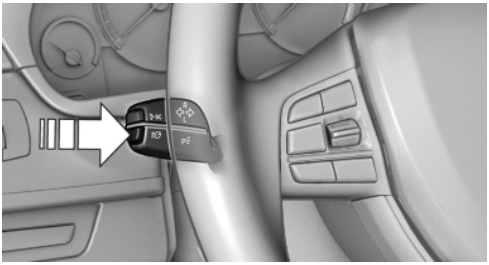
Adaptive light control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High-beam Assistant

The concept

When the low beams are switched on, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off or suppresses the light in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating



The High-beam Assistant can be activated when the low beams are switched on.

1. Turn the light switch to or .
2. Press the button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the low beams are on, the lights are automatically brightened or dimmed.

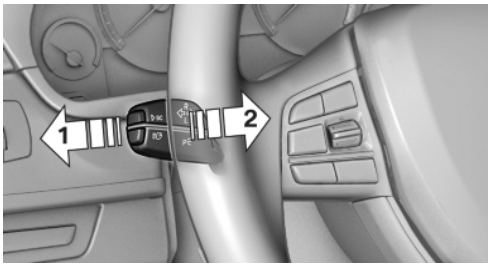
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams. Depending on the version of the system in the vehicle, the high beams may not switch off for oncoming vehicles, but may only be dimmed in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. In this case, the blue indicator light will stay on.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Switching the high beams on and off manually



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light. To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

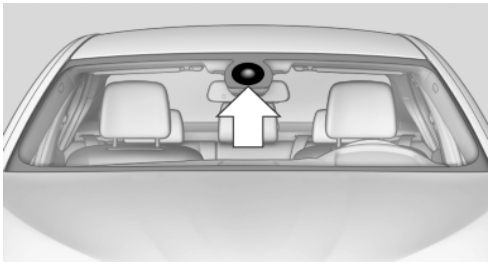
Personal responsibility

The high-beam assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk.◂

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ At low speeds.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Fog lamps

Front fog lamps

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on.



Press the button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlamp control, refer to page 87, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lamps.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting



The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness using the thumbwheel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Interior lamps

General information

The interior lamps, footwell lamps, entry lamps and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some of these lamps is influenced by the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting.



1 Interior lamps

2 Reading lamp

Switching the interior lamps on and off



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

Reading lamps



Press the button.

Reading lamps are located at the front and rear next to the interior lamps.

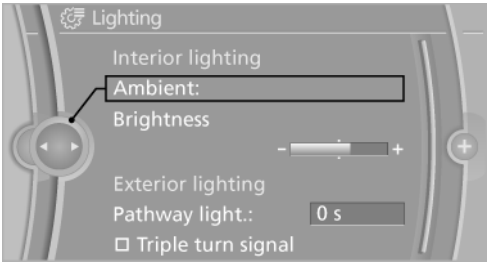
With the interior lamps shut off, the reading lamps cannot be switched on.

Ambient light

Depending on the equipment, the lighting can be individually adjusted in the interior for some lights.

Selecting color scheme

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Ambient:"



4. Select the desired setting.

If the color scheme of the line is selected and the welcome lamps are activated, the welcome lamps are displayed in color when unlocking the vehicle.

Setting the brightness

The brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting but also independently of it.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness"
4. Adjust the brightness.

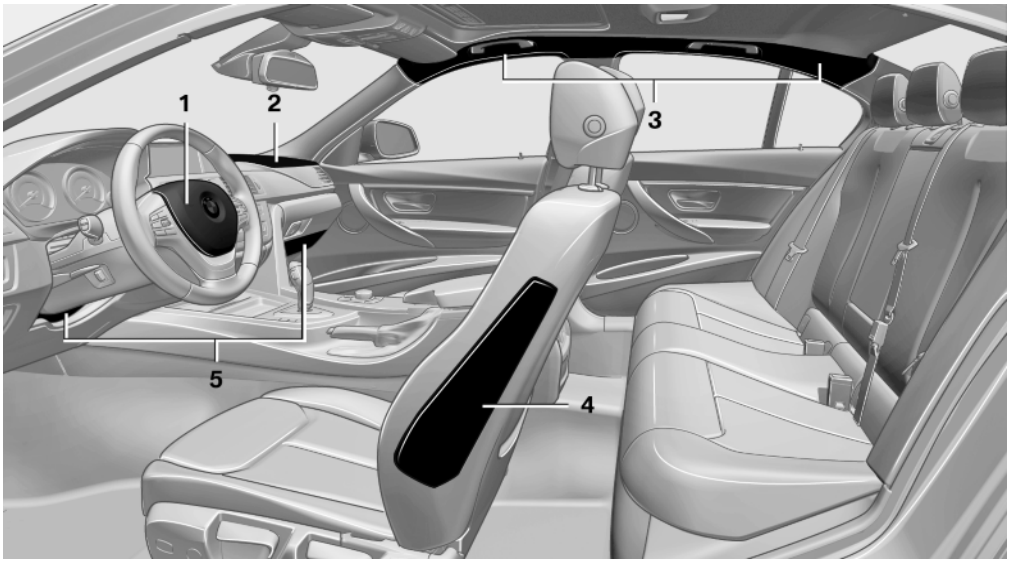
Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Safety

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbags

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint.

Side airbags

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbags

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRODUCTS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags

- Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the danger of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible if the airbag is triggered.
- There should be no people, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not rest against the head airbag; otherwise, injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.
- Do not remove the airbag restraint system.
- Do not remove the steering wheel.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, cover them or modify them in any way.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the headliner.◀

Even when all instructions are followed closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

In the case of a malfunction, deactivation and after triggering of the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, there is the danger of burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by your service center or a workshop that has the necessary authorization for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired triggering of the airbag, either of which could result in injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system



When the ignition is switch on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- The warning lamp lights up continuously.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

When there is a malfunction, have the airbag system checked immediately

When there is a malfunction, have the airbag system checked immediately; otherwise, there is a risk that the system does not function as expected in the event of an accident despite corresponding severity of the accident.◄

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

The system determines whether the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body.

The front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the front passenger airbags may not function properly.◄

Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, see the safety notes and instructions under Children on the front passenger seat.◄

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To make sure that the occupied seat cushion can be evaluated correctly

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by the manufacturer of your vehicle.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

Indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags



The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.



- The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, especially in the child seats that were required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front pas-

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICE

senger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front passenger airbag

The strength with which the driver's and front passenger airbags are triggered depends on the position of the driver's and front passenger seats.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats when a corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Move the respective seat forward all the way.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Unobstructed area of movement

Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects.◄

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The concept

The tire inflation pressure is measured in the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirements

The system must have been reset when the inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly. Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits

Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◄

The system does not operate correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

- For a mounted wheel without TPM electronics.
- When the TPM is disturbed by other systems or devices with the same radio frequency.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

Status display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

A correction is only necessary if this is indicated by the TPM

Wheels, green

The tire inflation pressure is equal to the target state.

One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels are yellow

- A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.
- The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.
- A flat tire in one or more tires while the system is being reset.

Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire. Reasons for this may be:

- TPM is being reset.
- Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency.
- Malfunction.

Resetting the system

Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) INIT "Reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Reset the tire pressure using "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving for a few minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are applied as set values. The resetting process is completed automatically during driving. The tires are shown in green and "TPM active" is shown on the Control Display.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. If you drive away again, the process resumes automatically.

If a flat tire is detected during a reset, all tires are displayed in yellow.

Low tire pressure message



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

- There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
- The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.

 Run-flat tires, refer to page 271, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.



Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◂

When a low inflation pressure is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.

2. Rectify the flat tire.

 Use of tire sealant, e.g., the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

 If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on the cargo load and the driving style and conditions.

For a vehicle containing an average load, the possible driving distance is approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When the vehicle is driven with a damaged tire, its handling characteristics change, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance, and altered self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be smaller or greater depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◄

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◄

Message when the system was not reset

A Check Control message is displayed.

The system detected a wheel change but was not reset.

Warnings regarding the current tire inflation pressure are not reliable.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

- A wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the service center check it if necessary.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by your service center.
- TPM could not be fully reset. Reset the system again.
- Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the disturbance, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

It detects a pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel change. This is detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits

Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER EFFECTIVE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

A natural, even pressure loss in all four tires cannot be detected. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- When the system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration.
- When driving with snow chains.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) INIT "Reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization with "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.

 Run-flat tires, refer to page 271, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.



Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◀

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

 Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

 If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

 If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.
2. Rectify the flat tire.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

 If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on the cargo load and the driving style and conditions.

For a vehicle containing an average load, the possible driving distance is approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When the vehicle is driven with a damaged tire, its handling characteristics change, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance, and altered self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be smaller or greater depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◂

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◂

Lane departure warning

The concept

Starting at a specific speed, this system alerts you when the vehicle on streets with lane markings is about to leave the lane. Depending on the country-specific version of the vehicle, the speed is between 35 mph/55 km/h and 45 mph/70 km/h. When switching on the system below this speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently in the event of warnings. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

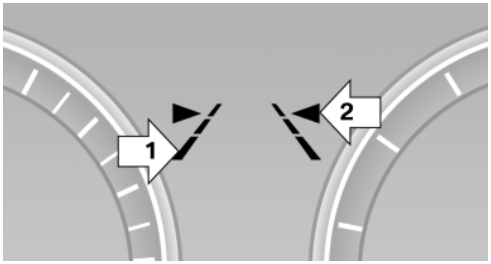
- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Display



- Lines, arrow 1: the system is activated.
- Arrows, arrow 2: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel begins vibrating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning ends:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.

System limits

Personal responsibility

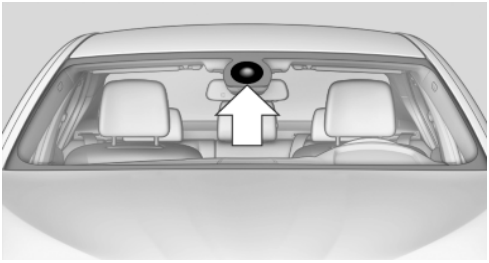
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the course of the road and the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control of the vehicle.◄

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- In the event of worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Camera



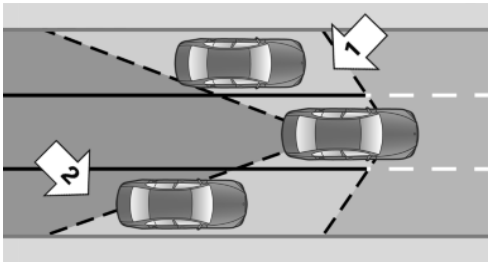
The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Active Blind Spot Detection

The concept



Two radar sensors below the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind on the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing lights up dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The lamp in the housing of the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Switching on/off



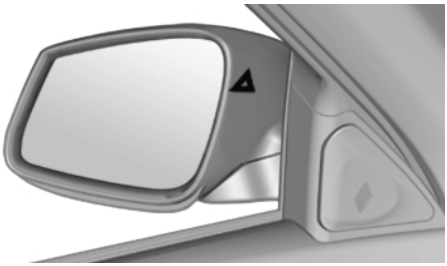
Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The system can issue warnings at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display



Information stage

The dimmed lamp in the mirror housing indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Warning

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the lamp in the mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

System limits

Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control over the vehicle.◄

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located under the rear bumper.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- Dirty or icy bumper.
- Stickers on the bumper.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- NBG009014A.

Compliance statement:

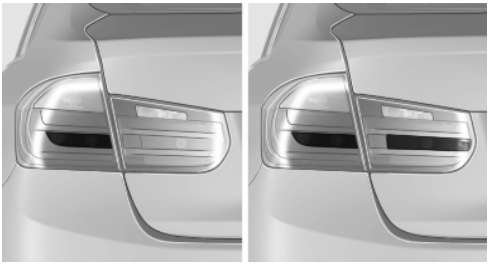
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Brake force display

The concept



- During normal brake application, the outer brake lamps light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lamps light up in addition.

Active Protection

The concept

The Active Protection safety package consists of systems that are independent of each other:

- PreCrash
- PostCrash

PreCrash

The concept

The system is used to detect critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. In in these situations, preventative protection measures are automatically undertaken to minimize the risk in the event of an accident as much as possible.

Critical driving situations may include:

- Full application of the brakes.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

If the vehicle includes the collision warning feature, impending collisions with vehicles driving

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

ahead or stopped in front of you can also be detected within the system's range.

Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. The system may not always detect critical situations reliably and in a timely manner. Adapt speed to traffic situation and drive alertly; otherwise, a risk to safety may result.◄

Function

After the safety belt is buckled, the front belts are automatically tightened once after the vehicle is driven is away.

In critical driving situations, the following individual functions become active:

- The front belts are automatically tightened.
- Automatic closing of the windows.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front belts are loosened again. All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the belt before continuing on your trip.

PostCrash

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the car to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision.

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Depressing the accelerator pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle remains steerable even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost. It thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when driving away and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions, such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Subject to physical limits, DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes at individual wheels.

Adjust your driving style to the situation

An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner.◀

Indicator/warning lamps

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in bends.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed.

The DSC system is switched off.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Indicator/warning lamps

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.

It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When rocking the vehicle or driving off in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating the Dynamic Traction Control DTC provides maximum traction on loose ground. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating DTC



Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC



Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Dynamic Damping Control

The concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

The system enhances driving dynamics and comfort as required for the road surface and driving style.

Programs

The system offers two different programs.

The programs can be selected via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 106.

SPORT

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

SPORT+

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility when driving with limited driving stabilization.

COMFORT

Balanced control of the vehicle.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering increases the steering angle of the front wheels at large steering wheel angles, e.g., in tight curves or when parking. Steering becomes more direct.

It also varies the force required to turn the wheels in accordance with the vehicle speed.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

This results in a sporty steering response. In addition, it becomes easier to steer during parking and maneuvering.

Driving Experience Switch

The concept

The Driving Experience Switch can be used to adjust the certain characteristics of the vehicle. Various programs can be selected for this purpose. The Driving Experience Switch and the DSC OFF buttons can each be used to activate a program.

Operating the programs

Press the button	Program
	DSC OFF TRACTION
	SPORT+ SPORT COMFORT ECO PRO

Automatic program change

The system automatically switches to COMFORT in the following situations:

- Failure of DSC Dynamic Damping Control.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.
- When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DSC OFF

When DSC OFF, refer to page 104, is active, driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

TRACTION

When TRACTION is active, the vehicle has maximum traction on loose road surfaces. DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 105, is activated. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

SPORT+

Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension with limited driving stabilization.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

Activating SPORT+

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic program change

When activating cruise control, the program automatically switches to SPORT mode.

Indicator/warning lamps

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

SPORT

Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension with maximum driving stabilization.

The program can be configured to individual specifications. The configuration is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating SPORT

Press button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT

When the display is activated on the Control Display, refer to page 107, the sport program can be set to individual specifications.

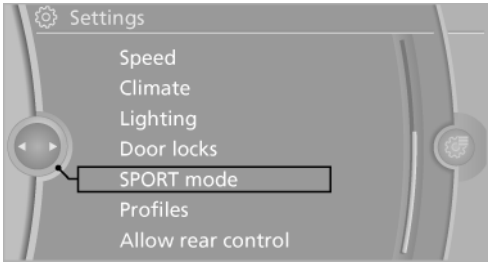
- Activate the sport program.
- "Configure SPORT mode"
- Configure the program.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Optionally, the sport program can be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "SPORT mode"



3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when the sport program is activated.

COMFORT

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating COMFORT

Press button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In certain situations, the system automatically changes to the NORMAL program, automatic program change, refer to page 106.

ECO PRO

Consistent tuning to minimize fuel consumption for maximum range with maximum driving stabilization.

Comfort functions and the engine controller are adjusted.

The program can be configured to individual specifications.

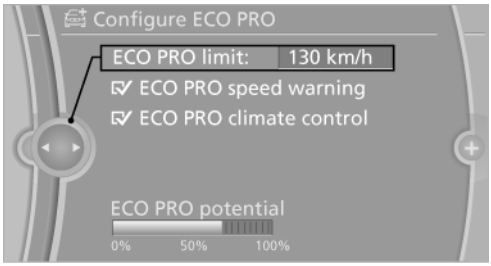
Activating ECO PRO



Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"



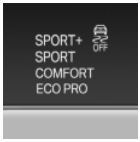
or

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure ECO PRO"

Make the desired settings.

Displays

Program selection



Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs.

Selected program



The selected program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

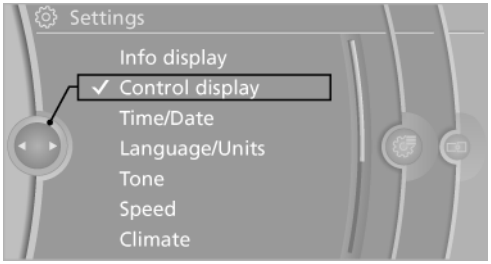
Display on the Control Display

Program changes can be displayed on the Control Display.

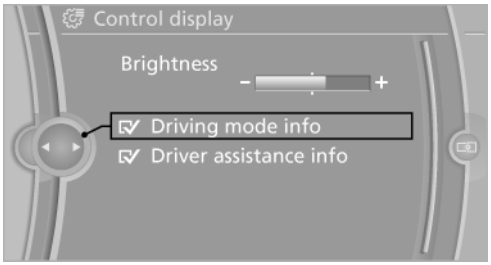
1. "Settings"

Information Provided by: DEALER

2. "Control display"



3. "Driving mode info"



Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving away on gradients. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive away without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load or when a trailer is being used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

Driving off without delay

After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin rolling back.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC

The concept

This system can be used to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it depends on the speed.

To maintain a certain distance, the system automatically decelerates, applies the brakes lightly, or accelerates again if the vehicle ahead begins moving faster.

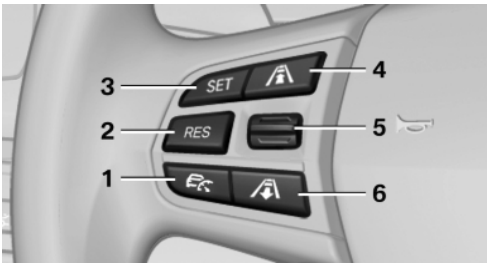
If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits. If the vehicle ahead of your drives away again from a halt, your vehicle is able to accelerate if operated accordingly.

Even if some time passes before the vehicle drives away again, the BMW can still be accelerated automatically and simply.

As soon as the road is clear, it accelerates to the desired speed.

The speed is also maintained on downhill gradients, but may not be maintained on uphill slopes if engine power is insufficient.

Buttons at a glance



1 System on/off, interrupt
2 Resume speed
3 Store speed
4 Reduce distance
5 Store, maintain/change speed
6 Increase distance

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

Switching off

Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

If switching off the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

- If active: press twice.
- If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed and distance are deleted.

Interrupting



When active, press the button.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

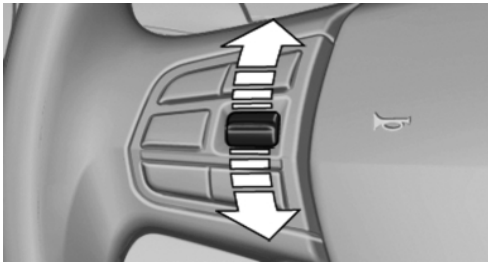
- The brakes are applied.
- Transmission position D is disengaged.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- DSC is actively controlling stability.
- The safety belt and the driver's door are opened when the vehicle is standing.
- The system has not detected objects for an extended period, e.g., on a road with very little traffic without road edge line markings.
- Radar sensor is soiled.

Maintaining/storing the speed



Press the button.

or:



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 111.

When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing, maintaining, and storing the speed

The rocker switch can be pressed while the system is interrupted to maintain and store the current speed. DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.



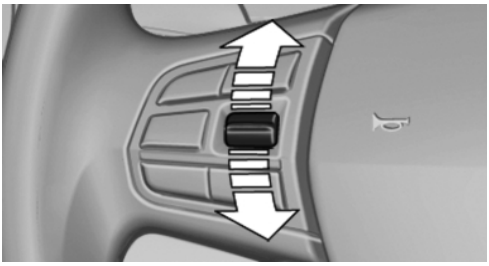
Adapting the desired speed

Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄



Speed differences

Great speed differences with vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck or when another vehicle swerves into your own lane, cannot be compensated for by the system.◄



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/ 1 km/h.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h. Max. adjustable speed: 110 mph/180 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Distance

Selecting a distance

Adjust the distance according to the traffic and weather conditions; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. Maintain the prescribed safety distance.◄

Reduce distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 112, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increase distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 112, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Calling up the desired speed and distance

While driving

RES Press the button with the system switched on.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

▷ When the system is switched off.

▷ When the ignition is switched off.

While standing

Before leaving the vehicle, secure it against rolling.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and apply the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.◄

The system brought the vehicle to a complete standstill.

▷ Green mark in the speedometer during a brief idle phase:

The vehicle ahead of you drives away while the mark is green: your vehicle accelerates without anything having to be done.

▷ Switch to orange of the mark in the speedometer after approx. 2 sec.:

The vehicle ahead of you drives away, while the mark is orange: in order to accelerate, briefly press the gas pedal or press the RES button or SET button.

Rolling bars in the distance indicator mean that the vehicle ahead of you has driven off.

You actively braked your vehicle to a halt by pressing on the brake pedal and it is standing behind another vehicle:

1. RES Press the button to call up a stored desired speed.
2. Release the brake pedal.
3. Press on the accelerator briefly, or press the RES button or the rocker switch when the vehicle ahead of you drives away.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed



▷ The marking lights up in green: the system is active.

▷ The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

▷ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements for operation are currently not met.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

The selected distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you is shown.

Distance display
 Distance 1
 Distance 2
 Distance 3
 Distance 4 This value is set after the system is switched on.
 The system has been interrupted or distance control is deactivated because the accelerator is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.
 Distance control is deactivated because the accelerator is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.
Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven away.

Indicator/warning lamps

Personal responsibility

The indicator and warning lamps do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her desired driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◀



Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.



The vehicle symbol lights up in orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.



The vehicle symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for operating the system.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively assume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator.



The vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:

You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

System limits

Speed range

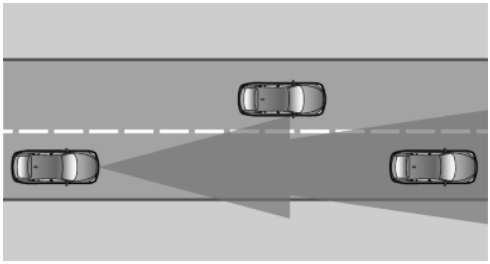
Best results are achieved when using the system on well-developed roads and highways. The desired speed can be selected between 20 mph/30 km/h to 110 mph/180 km/h.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Comply with the legal speed limit in every situation when using the system.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles driving ahead of you for instance might not be detected.

Limited detection capacity

Because of the limits to the detection capacity, you should be alert at all times so that you can intervene actively, if necessary; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◀

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate when a stationary obstacle is located in the same lane, e.g., a vehicle at a red traffic light or at the end of traffic congestion.

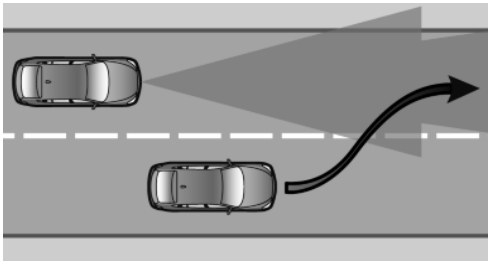
The system also does not respond to:

- Pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- Red traffic lights.
- Stationary objects.
- Cross traffic.
- Approaching traffic.

No warnings

A warning may not be issued when approaching a stationary or very slow-moving obstacle. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◀

Swerving vehicles

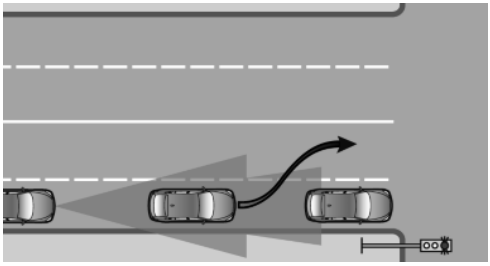


A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

Swerving vehicles

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if necessary. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◀

Unexpected lane change

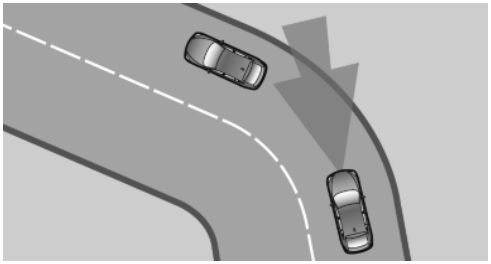


If a vehicle ahead of you unexpectedly moves into another lane from behind a stopped vehicle, you yourself must react, as the system does not react to stopped vehicles.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

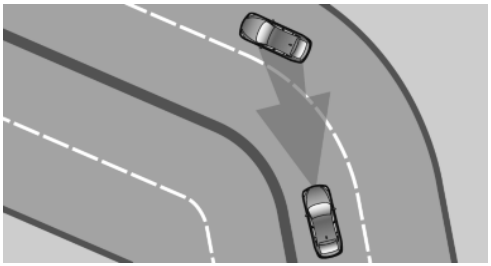
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly in the curve, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves, situations may result due to the restricted detection range of the system in which a vehicle driving ahead of you may not be detected at all, or not until after a considerable delay.



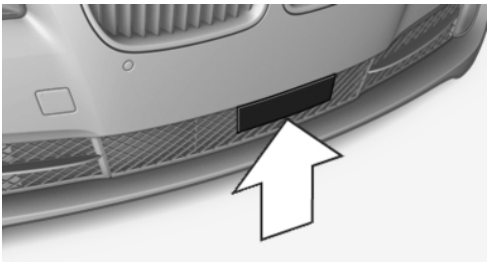
When approaching a curve, the system may react briefly to the vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. Any deceleration of the vehicle by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating. After the accelerator pedal is released, the system becomes active again and independently controls the speed.

Driving away

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive away automatically, e.g., on steep inclines or behind bumps in the road.

Radar sensor

Position



Radar sensor

Dirty or covered sensor

A dirty or covered sensor may hinder the detection of vehicles.

- If necessary, clean the radar sensor. Remove layers of snow and ice carefully.
- Do not cover the view field of the radar sensor.

Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred during parking, for example.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- OAYARS3-A

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note

To reduce electromagnetic effects, please use properly.

The standard SAR value is 2.0 W/kg; the tested value of this product is 0.751 W/kg.

NCC declaration:

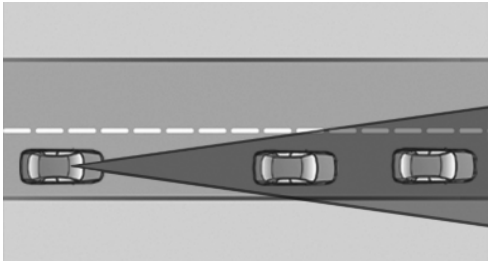
1. Companies or persons without authorization should not change the frequency, increase the power, or change the characteristics or functions of the original design of low-power radio frequency devices with type approval.
2. Low-power radio frequency devices should not impair legal communication or flight safety. If this type of impairment is detected, the device should be switched off immediately. In this case, please contact the manufacturer and only use the product after the problem has been corrected.
3. The "legal communication" specified above refers to communication in accordance with telecommunication regulations. Low-power devices should withstand interference from legal communication and ISM devices.

Collision warning

The concept

If the vehicle does not include Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, the collision warning is controlled via the camera in the base of the interior rearview mirror.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h. The time of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.



In the process, vehicles in a similar direction of movement are observed if they are located within the detection range of the system.

When the vehicle is intentionally brought into contact with a vehicle, the collision warning is delayed to avoid false warnings.

Warning stages

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Acute warning

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Switching the warning function on/off



 Press the button

▷ On: the LED lights up.

Information Provided by: DEALER

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Configuring the warning time

After the warning function is switched on, the warning time can be set via the iDrive. For a late warning time, prewarning is deactivated.

These settings have no effect on the time of the warning from the Active Cruise Control that prompts the driver to intervene or brake.

Display in the instrument cluster

The collision warning can be issued in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and acoustically.

Warning stages

Symbol	Measure
	The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Increase distance.
	The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Adapting your speed and driving style

The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◄

System limits

Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Detection range

The detection capacity of the camera and the collision warning has limitations.

This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.

For example, the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

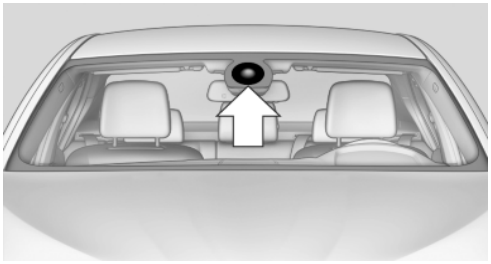
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the camera view field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ In the case of vehicles with insufficiently visible tail lamps.
- ▷ In the case of partially covered vehicles.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- ▷ During the calibration process of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

Prewarning sensitivity

Depending on the set prewarning time, this may result in increased false warnings.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Camera



The camera is located near the base of the mirror.

Keep windshield clean and clear in the area in front of the interior rear view mirror.

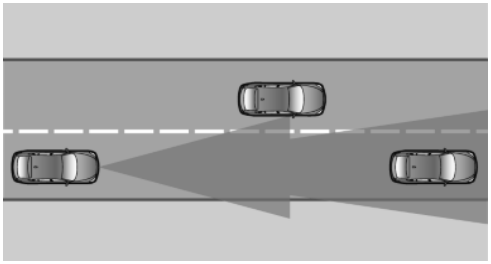
Collision warning with braking function

The concept

If the vehicle is equipped with Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, the collision warning is controlled via the cruise control radar sensor.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h. The time of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.



It responds to stationary or moving objects that are within the detection range of the radar system.

When the vehicle is intentionally brought into contact with a vehicle, the collision warning is delayed to avoid false warnings.

Warning stages

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Acute warning with braking function

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The acute warning prompts the driver to intervene and, if there is the danger of a collision, is accompanied by a braking intervention.

The braking intervention is executed with limited braking force and for a brief period only. The intervention cannot bring the vehicle to a complete standstill.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

Adapting your speed and driving style

The acute warning does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◀

The braking intervention can be interrupted by pressing on the accelerator or by actively moving the steering wheel.

When towing or tow-starting the vehicle, switch off the collision warning with braking function to prevent undesired interventions.

The braking function is deactivated if the DSC Dynamic Stability Control or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is deactivated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Switching the warning function on/off



Press the button

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Configuring the warning time

After the warning function is switched on, the warning time can be set via the iDrive. For a late warning time, prewarning is deactivated.

These settings have no effect on the time of the warning from the Active Cruise Control that prompts the driver to intervene or brake.

Display in the instrument cluster

The collision warning can be issued in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and acoustically.

Warning stages

Symbol	Measure
	The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Increase distance.
	The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Adapting your speed and driving style

The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◄

System limits

Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Detection range

The detection capacity of the radar sensor and the collision warning has limitations.

This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.

For example, the following situations may not be detected:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.

Prewarning sensitivity

Depending on the set prewarning time, this may result in increased false warnings.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Cruise control

The concept

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking action is insufficient.

Unfavorable conditions

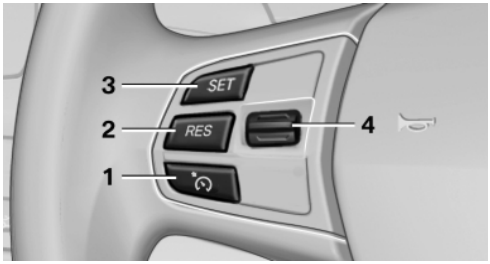
Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, for instance:

- On curvy roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◄

Controls

At a glance



1 System on/off, interrupt
2 Resume speed
3 Store speed
4 Store, maintain/change speed

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

Switching off

Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Press the button.

- If active: press twice.
- If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting

When active, press the button.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

- The brakes are applied.
- The clutch pedal is depressed.
- Transmission position D is disengaged.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- DSC is actively controlling stability.

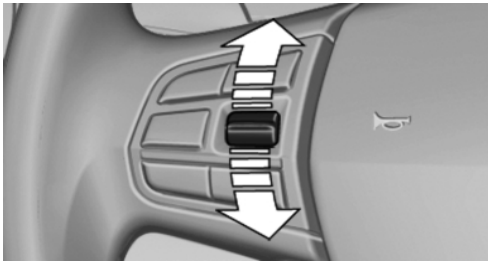
Maintaining/storing the current speed

SET Press the button.

or

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, Displays in the speedometer, refer to page 120.

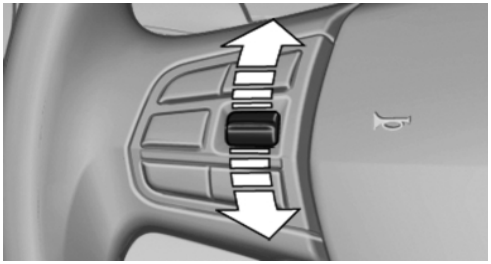
When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Change, maintain speed

The rocker switch can be pressed while interrupted to maintain and store the current speed.

Adapting the desired speed

Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/ 1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator. After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Resuming the desired speed



Press the button.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp



Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed



- The marking lights up in green: the system is active.
- The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.
- The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements for operation are currently not met.

PDC Park Distance Control

The concept

In addition to the PDC Park Distance Control, the backup camera, refer to page 123, can be switched on.

PDC supports you when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind your vehicle are indicated with:

- Signal tones.
- Visual display.

Measurement

Measurements are made by ultrasound sensors in the bumpers.

The range is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

- By the front sensors and two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/ 1.50 m.

System limits

Check the traffic situation as well

PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.◄

Avoid driving quickly with PDC

Avoid approaching an object quickly.

Avoid driving away quickly while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning.◄

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, e.g.:

- With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With low objects.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected.

False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered in ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- In heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

 The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent tone is sounded that indicates the position of the object. For example, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object becomes, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 12 in/30 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- If the vehicle stops in front of an object that is detected by only one of the corner sensors.
- If moving parallel to a wall.

The signal tone is switched off:

- When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.
- When transmission position P is engaged.

Volume

You can set the volume of the PDC signal tone, refer to page 189.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to PDC:

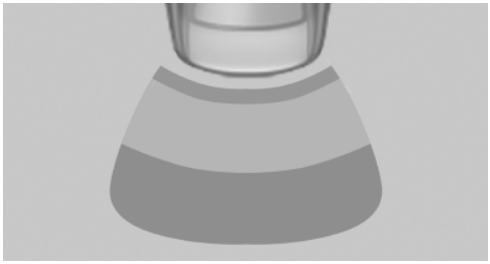
1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
2. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Zoom view

On the left part of the display screen, the vehicle is shown enlarged.

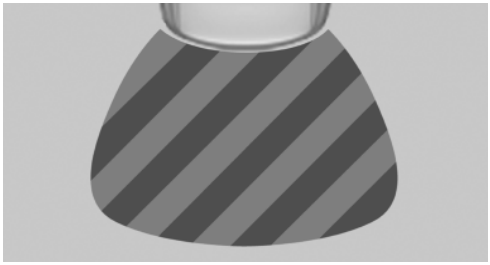
Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES



- Forward gear or transmission position D engaged: front area of the vehicle.
- Reverse gear or transmission position R engaged: rear area of the vehicle.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.



On the Control Display, the areas in front of and behind the vehicle are shaded. PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

To ensure full operability:

- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Surround View

The concept

Surround View includes the following systems:

- Backup camera, refer to page 123
- Side View, refer to page 127.
- Top View, refer to page 126.

It assists the driver when parking, maneuvering and on blind driveways and intersections.

Backup camera

The concept

The backup camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

System limits

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the backup camera.◀

Detection of objects

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the backup camera.◀

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The backup camera image is displayed if the system was switched on via the iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

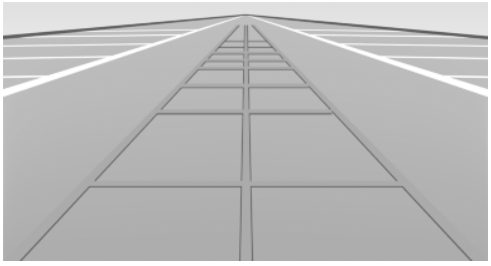
Switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 125.

Assistance functions

Functional requirement

- The backup camera is switched on.
- The trunk lid is fully closed.

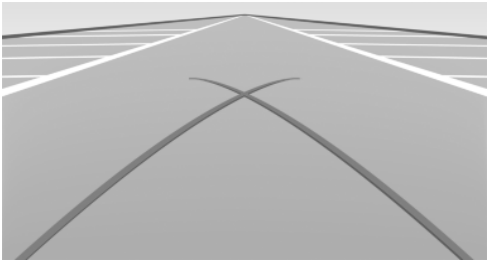
Pathway lines



- Can be shown in the backup camera image when in transmission position R.
- Help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.
- Are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Show the parking aid lines, refer to page 125.

Turning circle lines

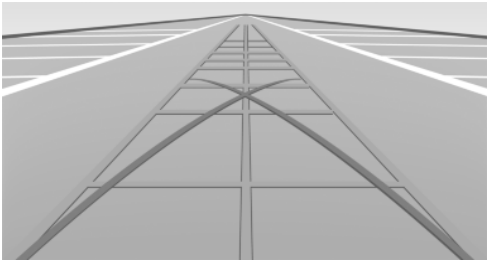


- Can be shown in the backup camera image.
- Show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.
- Only one turning circle line is displayed when the steering wheel is turned.

Show the parking aid lines, refer to page 125.

Parking using pathway and turning circle lines

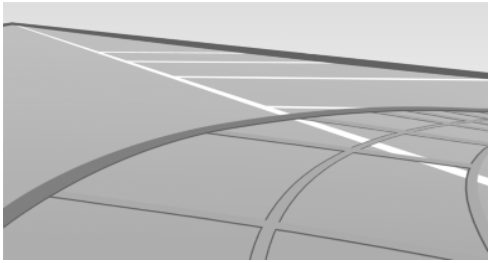
1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



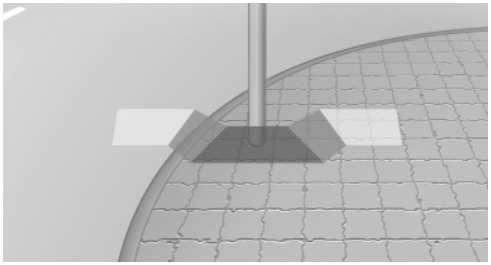
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRocess

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.



Obstacle marking



▷ Spatially-shaped markings can be shown in the backup camera image.

Their colored steps match the markings of the PDC. This simplifies estimation of the distance to the object shown.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Showing the parking aid lines

"Parking aid lines"

Pathway and turning circle lines are displayed.

Showing the obstacle marking

"Obstacle marking"

Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via iDrive

With PDC activated:

"Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

With the backup camera switched on:

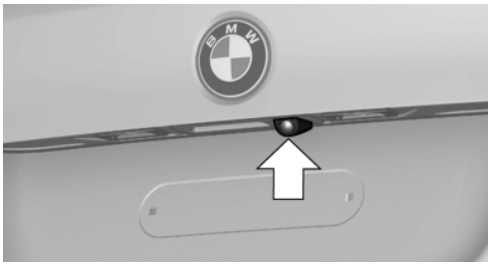
1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the backup camera switched on:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the trunk lid. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 299.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Top View

The concept

Top View assists you in parking and maneuvering. The area around the doors and the road area around the vehicle are shown on the Control Display for this purpose.

Capturing the image

The image is captured by two cameras integrated in the exterior mirrors and by the backup camera.

The range is at least 7 ft/2 m to the side and rear.

In this way, obstacles up to the height of the exterior mirrors are detected early.

System limits

Top View cannot be used in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With the trunk lid open.
- With an exterior mirror folded in.
- In poor light.

A Check Control message is displayed in some of these situations.

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the cameras.◀

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The Top View and PDC images are displayed if the system is switched on via iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

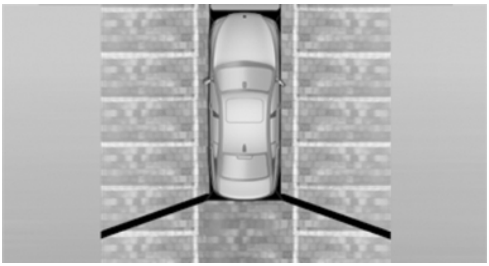
- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

If Top View is displayed, switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 127.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display.

When the distance to an object is small, a red bar is shown in front of the vehicle, as it is in the PDC display.



The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to Top View:

"Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

Information Provided by: DEALER eProcess
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via iDrive

With Top View switched on:

"Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

With Top View switched on:

1. "Brightness"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1. "Contrast"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Displaying the turning circle and pathway lines

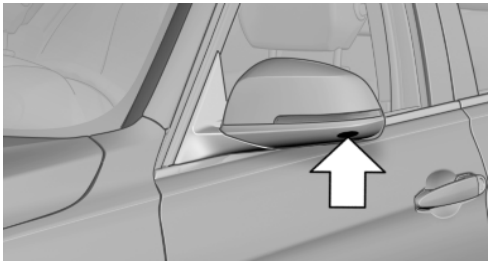
- The static, red turning circle line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.
- The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle.

 The pathway line is dependent on the current steering angle and is continuously adjusted with the steering wheel movement.

"Parking aid lines"

Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

Cameras



The lenses of the Top View cameras are located at the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 299.

Side View

The concept

Side View provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections. Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To improve visibility, two cameras in the front of the vehicle record the traffic situation on each side.

Capturing the image

Two cameras integrated in the bumpers capture the image.

The cameras capture a maximum range of 330 ft/100 m.

Display

The images from both cameras are shown simultaneously on the Control Display.

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle on blind driveways and intersections with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the Side View cameras.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Switching on/off



Press the button.

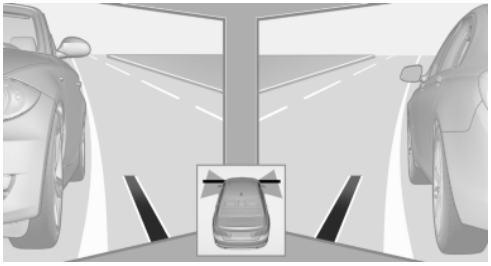
Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Display on the Control Display

The traffic area to the left and right is displayed on the Control Display.



Guidelines at the bottom of the image show the position of the front of the vehicle.

Brightness

With the Side View switched on:

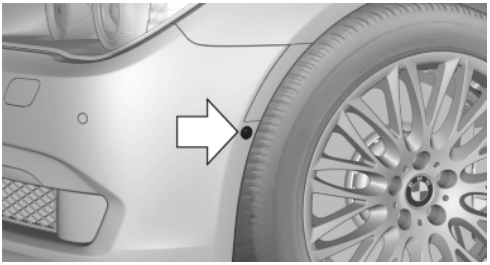
1. "Brightness"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the Side View switched on:

1. "Contrast"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Cameras



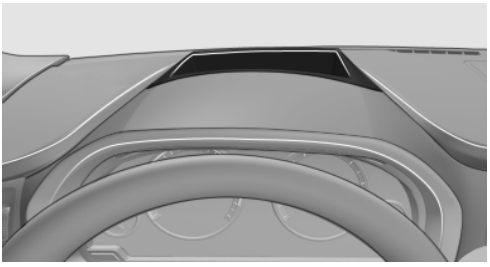
The two camera lenses are located on the sides of the bumper.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 299.

Head-up Display

The concept



This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e.g., the speed.

In this way, the driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by:

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

- Certain sitting positions.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

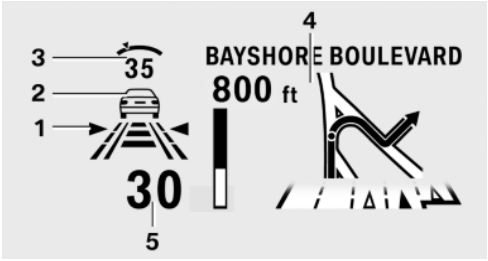
If the image is distorted, check the basic settings.

Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Head-up display"

 Switch the Head-up Display ON/OFF as required.

Display



1 Lane departure warning
2 Active Cruise Control
3 Desired speed
4 Navigation system
5 Speed

The collision warning, Night Vision pedestrian warning, or Check Control messages are displayed briefly if needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient light.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.

 The brightness is adjusted.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 89.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting the height

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller.

 The height is adjusted.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the rotation

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the controller.

 Rotation is set.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

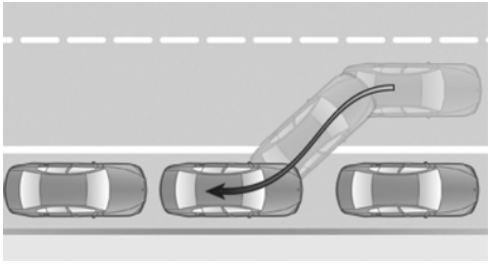
The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.

Therefore, have the special windshield replaced by a service center only.

Parking assistant

The concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

When parking, also take note of the visual and acoustic information issued by the PDC and the parking assistant and accelerate or brake accordingly.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 121.

Personal responsibility

The parking assistant does not relieve the driver of responsibility for the vehicle during the parking procedure.

Watch the parking space and parking procedure closely and intervene if necessary; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.◄

Requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- Minimum length: own vehicle length plus approx. 4 ft/1.2 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

For parking procedure

Closed doors.

Switching on

Using the button



Press the button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

By engaging reverse

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Activate: "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol in the Control Display.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

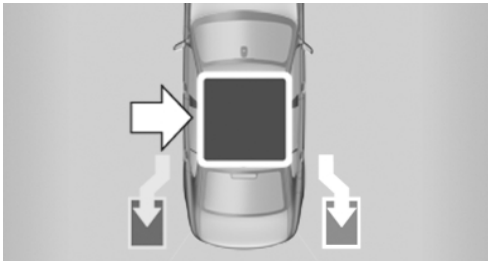
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Display on the Control Display

Activating/deactivating systems

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

System status





Gray: the system is not activated. Parking space search.

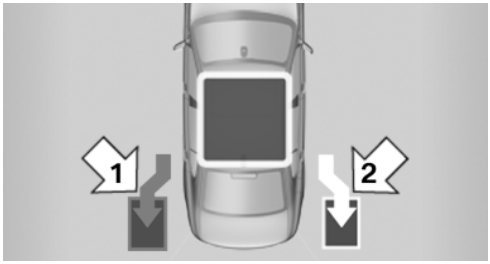
Blue: the system is activated. A suitable parking space was found.



The parking procedure is active.

Steering control has been seized.

Status of the parking space search



- Gray, arrow 1: parking space search.
- Blue, arrow 2: parking space is suitable.

 The vehicle is parked in the parking space if the parking procedure is active.
- No display: no parking space search.

Parking using the parking assistant

Personal responsibility

The parking assistant does not relieve the driver of responsibility for the vehicle during the parking procedure.

Watch the parking space and parking procedure closely and intervene if necessary; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.◄

Check the traffic situation as well

Loud sounds outside and within the vehicle can drown out the signal tones of the parking assistant and PDC.

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident.◄

1. Switch on the parking assistant and activate it if necessary.

 The status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

 The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.
3. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Notes

- The parking assistant takes control of steering for as long as the symbol for active parking appears on the display.
- The system maneuvers the vehicle to position it properly in smaller parking spaces, for example.
- To achieve the best possible parking position, wait for the automatic steering wheel

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

movement after the gear change when the vehicle is stationary.

- When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time by:

- Grasping the steering wheel and steering yourself.
- "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The procedure is interrupted automatically:

- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/ 10 km/h.
- On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces if necessary.
- If doors are open.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Continuing

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if necessary.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display to do this.

Switching off

The system can be deactivated as follows:

-  Press the button.
- Switch off the ignition.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

System limits

Changes to the parking space

Changes to the parking space after it was measured are not taken into account by the system.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Transporting loads

Loads that extend beyond the perimeter of the vehicle are not taken into account by the system during the parking procedure.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Curbs

The parking assistant may steer the vehicle over or onto curbs.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, the wheels, tires, or the vehicle may become damaged.◄

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not provide assistance in parking.

- In tight curves.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When sensors are dirty or iced over.
- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- When leaves or snow has collected in the parking space.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, e.g.:

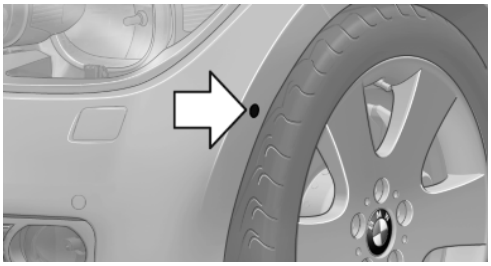
Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

- With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure, such as fences.

The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel arches.

To ensure full operability:

- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

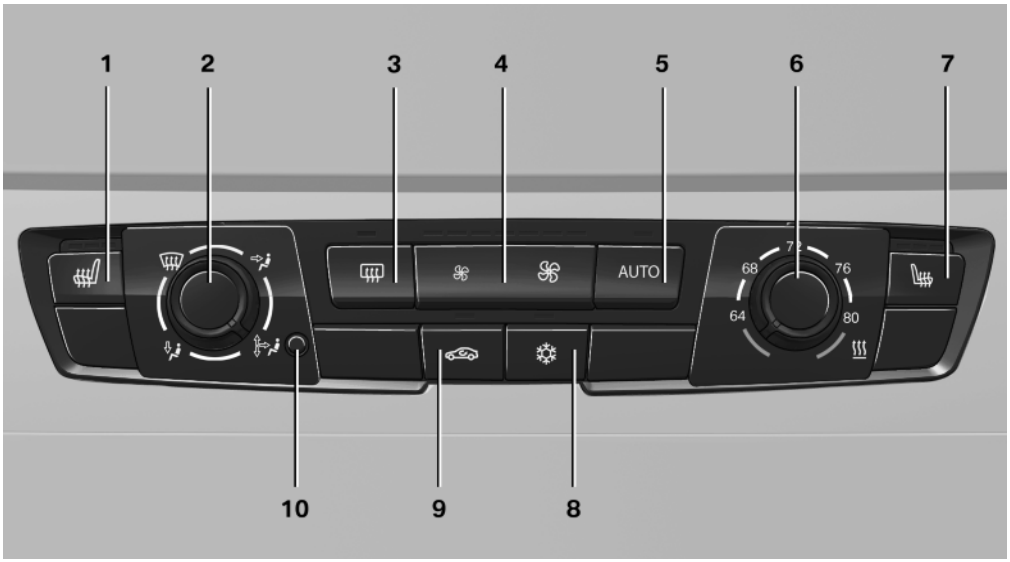
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Climate control

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Automatic climate control



1 Seat heating, left 47
2 Vent settings
3 Rear window defroster
4 Air flow
5 AUTO program
6 Temperature
7 Seat heating, right 47
8 Cooling function
9 Recirculated-air mode
10 Interior temperature sensor — always keep clear

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution



Turn the wheel to select the desired program.

- Windows.
- Upper body region.
- Windows, upper body region, and footwell.
- Footwell.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Direct the air distribution toward windows, increase the air flow and temperature, and, if necessary, use the cooling function.

Rear window defroster



Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Air flow, manual



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The air flow of the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

AUTO program



Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 135, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Temperature



Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Cooling function

The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and – depending on the temperature setting – warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 158, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

- LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume, if necessary.

Continuous recirculated-air mode

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily.◀

Switching the system on/off

Switching off



Press the left button at the minimum speed.

Switching on

Press any button except the seat heating buttons.

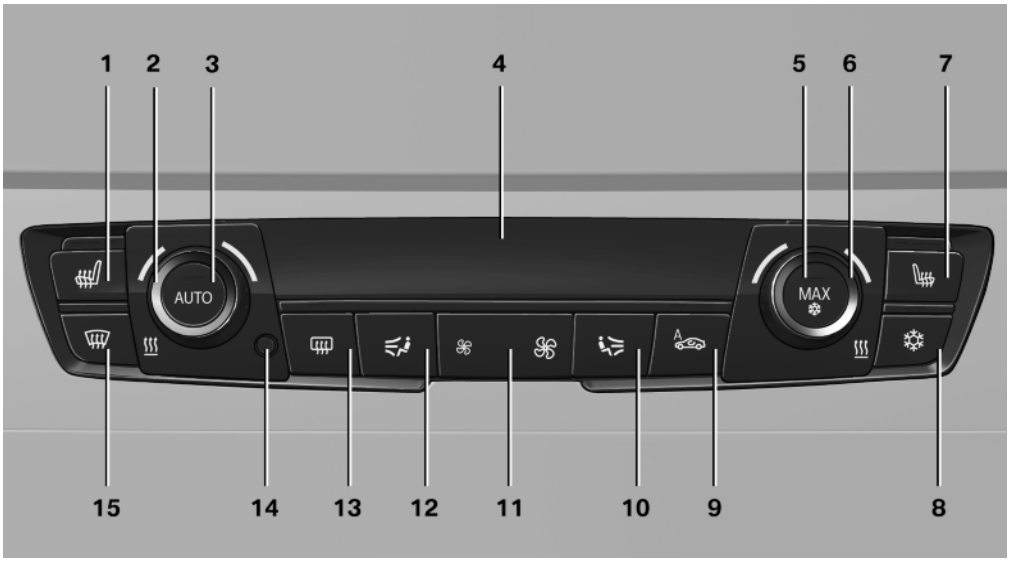
Microfilter, recirculated air filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The recirculated-air filter removes dust from the interior air in recirculated-air mode.

These filters should be replaced during scheduled maintenance of your vehicle., refer to page 277

Automatic climate control with enhanced features



1 Seat heating, left 47
2 Temperature, left
3 AUTO program
4 Display
5 Maximum cooling
6 Temperature, right

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

7 Seat heating, right 47
8 Cooling function
9 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
10 Air distribution, right
11 Air flow, AUTO intensity
12 Air distribution, left
13 Rear window defroster
14 Interior temperature sensor — always keep clear
15 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Climate control functions in detail

Temperature



Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program



Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 137, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Maximum cooling



Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Air flows out of the vents for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

The air is cooled fastest when the engine is running.

The air flow can be adjusted when the program is active.

Cooling function

The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and – depending on the temperature setting – warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 158, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shutoff automatically.
- Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.



Continuous recirculated-air mode

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily.◀

Manual air distribution



Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and footwell.
- Footwell.
- Windows and footwell: driver's side only.
- Windows, upper body region and footwell: driver's side only.

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Air volume, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.



Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

The selected air volume is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air volume of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Rear window defroster



Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation



Press the button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

If the windows are fogged over, additionally switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off



Press the left button at the minimum speed.

Switching on

Press any button except the seat heating buttons.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter, recirculated-air filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

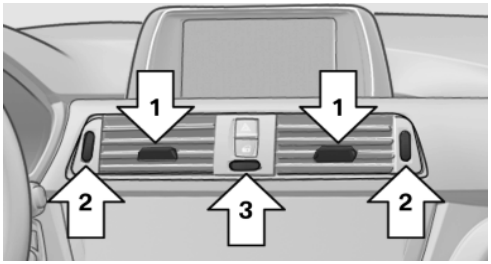
The activated-charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

The recirculated-air filter removes dust from the interior air in recirculated-air mode.

These filters should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 277, of your vehicle.

Ventilation

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 2.
- Thumbwheel to vary the temperature, arrow 3.

 Toward blue: colder.

 Toward red: warmer.

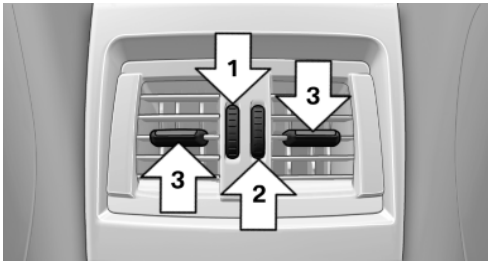
Adjusting the ventilation

- Ventilation for cooling:

 Adjust the vent to direct the air in your direction, e.g., if the vehicle interior is hot from the sun.
- Draft-free ventilation:

 Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

Ventilation in the rear



- Thumbwheel for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel to vary the temperature, arrow 2.

 Toward blue: colder.

 Toward red: warmer.
- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 3.

Parked-car ventilation

The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if necessary.

The system can be switched on and off at any external temperature, either directly or by using two preset switch-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Operation can be performed via iDrive.

Switching on/off directly

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate parked-car vent."

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Preselecting the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

Activating the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to reactivated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Integrated universal remote control

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

During programming

During programming and before activating a device using the integrated universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects in the range of movement of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Compatibility

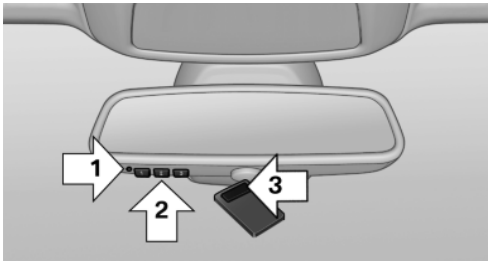
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- Your service center.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Controls on the interior rearview mirror



- LED, arrow 1.
- Buttons, arrow 2.
- The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

 Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.
3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.

Information Provided by: DEALER EFFECTIVE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. When the LED flashes faster, this indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed.

 If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

 Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual of the system being set up for information on how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this work step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. When the LED flashes faster, this indicates that the button on the interior rearview mir-

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

ror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Controls

Before operation

Before operating a system using the integrated universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects within the range of movement of the remote-controlled system; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◄

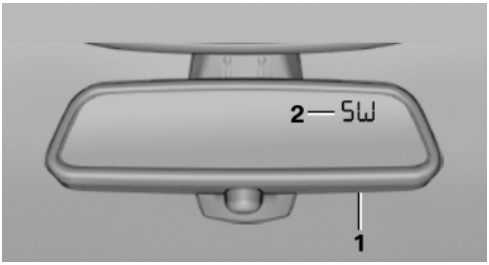
The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Digital compass

At a glance



1 Control button

2 Mirror display

Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

Operating concept

Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

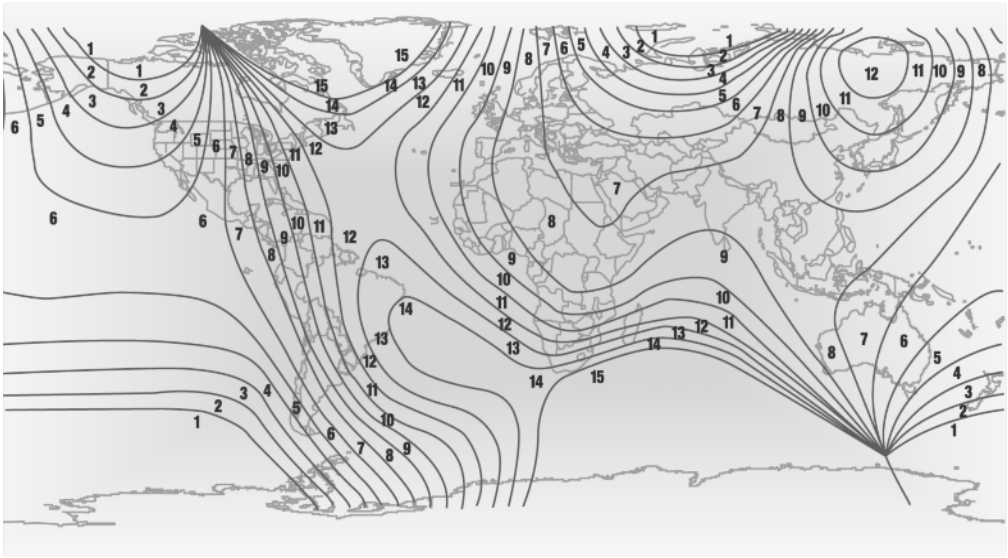
Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

World map with compass zones



Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone corresponding to your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- The wrong point of the compass is displayed.
- The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- Not all points of the compass are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/ 7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

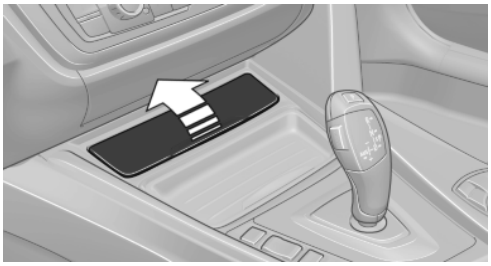
Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

The setting is stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

Ashtray/cigarette lighter

Ashtray

Opening



Raise cover.

Emptying

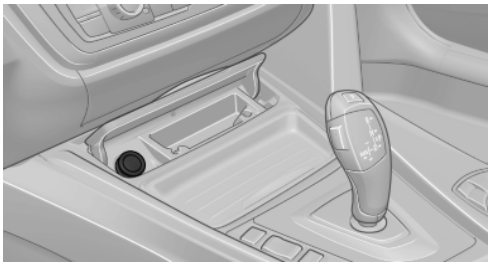
Take out the insert.

Lighter

Danger of burns

Only hold the hot lighter by its knob; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.

Switch off the ignition and take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves.◄



The lighter is located next to the ashtray.



Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

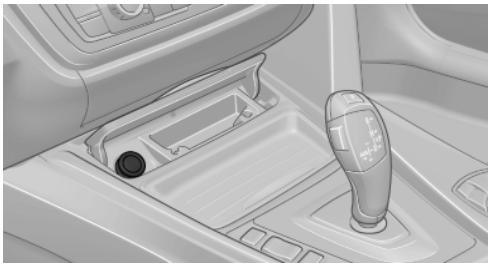
Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

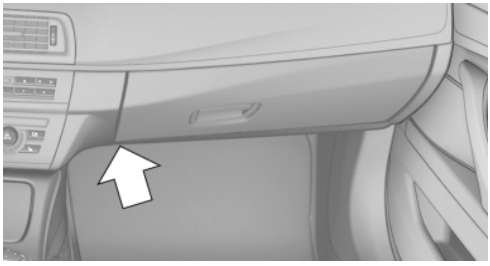
Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Front center console



Raise the cap and remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the front passenger footwell



Socket is located below the glove compartment.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear center console



Remove cover.

In the cargo area



The socket is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Through-loading system

General information

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40.

Danger of pinching

Before folding down the rear seat backrests, ensure that the area of movement of the backrests is clear. In particular, ensure that no one is located in the area of movement and that no one reaches into the area of movement of the rear seat backrests when the middle section is folded down. Otherwise, injury or damage may result.◄

Locking the backrest

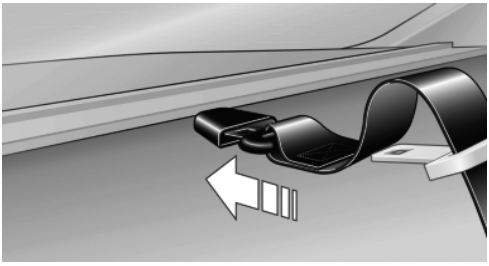
Before carrying persons in the rear, engage and thereby lock the backrests, or the restraining effect of the safety belts during an accident may be limited.◄

Retract the head restraints if necessary before backrests are folded down

With folding head restraints, fold in the head restraints before folding down the backrests, or damage may result.◄

Opening

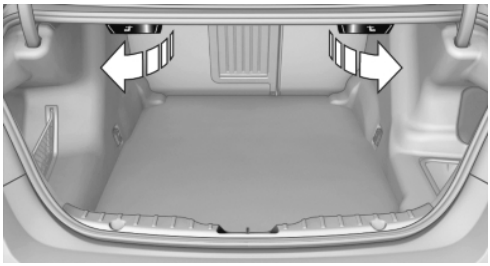
1. Unlock the belt lock of the center safety belt in the rear using the latch plate of another safety belt.
2. Insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the specially designated fixture on the rear window shelf.



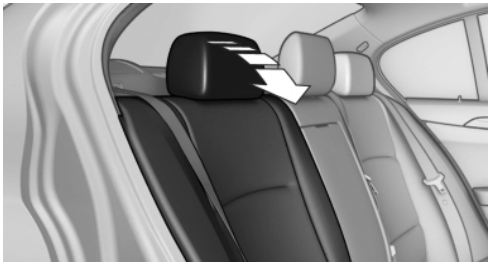
3. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

4. Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.



5. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.



Closing

1. Return the rear seat backrest to the upright seating position and engage it.

 Ensure that the lock is securely engaged

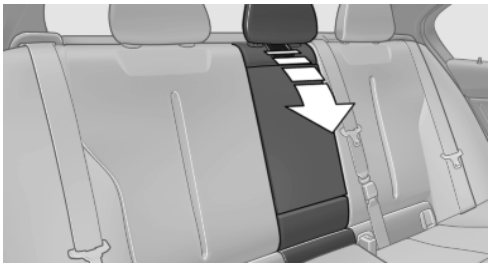
 When folding back the backrest, be sure that it locks in place securely. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

2. Release the latch plate from the fixture on the rear window shelf and insert it into the belt lock of the center safety belt. Make sure you hear the latch plate engage.

To secure cargo, refer to page 160, with nets or draw straps, the cargo area is fitted with lashing eyes.

Folding down the middle section

1. Fold in the middle head restraint.
2. Reach into the recess and pull the middle section forward.



Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Notes

No loose objects in the passenger compartment

Do not stow any objects in the passenger compartment without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants for instance during braking and avoidance maneuvers.◄

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard. The mat materials could damage the dashboard.◄

Storage compartments

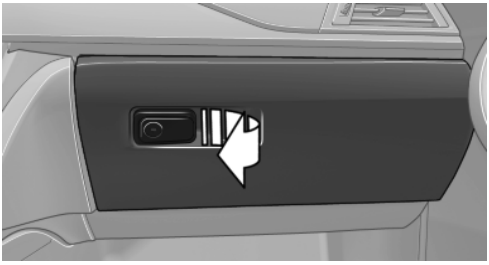
The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- Glove compartment on the front passenger side, refer to page 148.
- Without Smoker's package: Front storage compartment, in front of the cupholders, refer to page 149.
- Storage compartment in the front center armrest, refer to page 149.
- Compartments in the doors, refer to page 149.
- Nets on the backrests of the front seats.
- Storage compartment in the rear center console, refer to page 150.

Glove compartment

Front passenger side

Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

The net in the glove compartment is provided for stowing the storage tray for the cupholder, refer to page 150.

Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.◄

Closing

Fold up the cover.

Locking

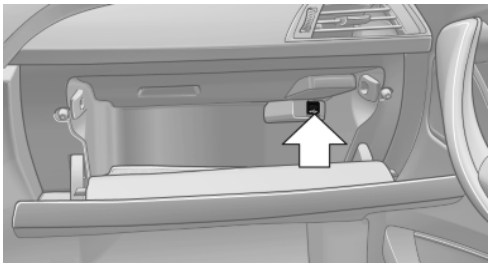
The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key to separately secure the trunk lid, refer to page 38, for example.

After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over, such as at a hotel, without the integrated key, refer to page 30.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

This prevents access to the glove compartment and to the cargo area.

USB interface for data transfer



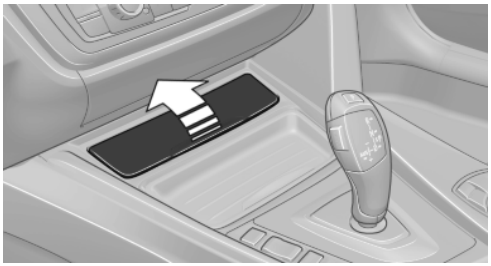
Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:

- Personal Profile settings, refer to page 33.
- Music collection, refer to page 205.

Observe the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Front storage compartment



Raise the lid to open it.

Compartments in the doors

Do not stow any breakable objects

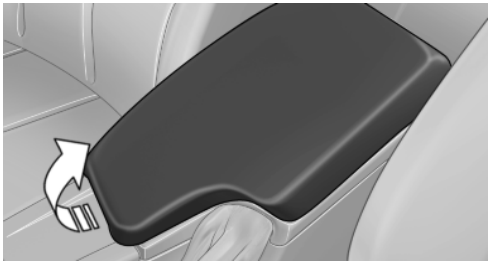
Do not store any breakable objects, e. g. glass bottles, in the compartments, or there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Center armrest

Front

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the front seats.

Opening



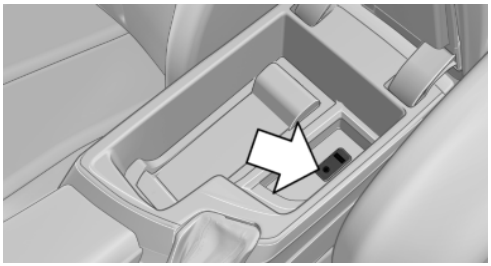
Raise the center arm rest.

Repositioning

Center armrest can be pushed in the longitudinal direction. It engages in the end positions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Connection for an external audio device



This can be used to connect an external audio device, such as an MP3 player.

- AUX-IN port, refer to page 210.
- USB audio interface, refer to page 210.

Storage compartment in the rear

Storage compartment is located in the rear center console.

Cupholders

Notes

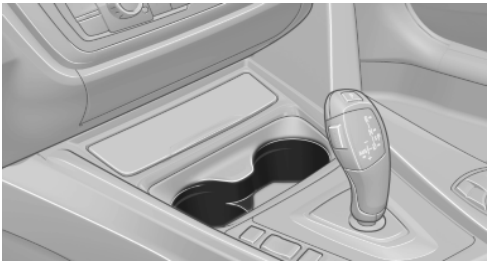
Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Unsuitable containers

Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage.◀

Front



Storage tray for front cupholders

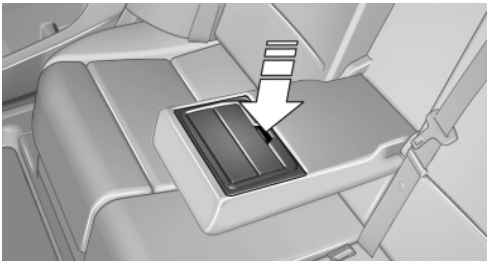
The cupholder with the storage tray can be used for additional storage. To do this, place the storage tray in the cupholder.

Only use the storage tray for small objects, such as keys or the remote control.

When not in use, stow the storage tray in the glove compartment net. Insert the storage tray into the net so that the top surface faces up. Note the trapezoidal shape of the net and tray.

Rear

In the center armrest.



Pull the center armrest forward at the strap.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in, one after the other.

Pushing back the covers

Push back the covers before folding up the center armrest; otherwise, the cupholder could become damaged.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Clothes hooks

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear.

Do not obstruct view

When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision.◄

No heavy objects

Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers.◄

Storage compartments in the cargo area

Left storage compartment

A storage compartment is located on the left side.

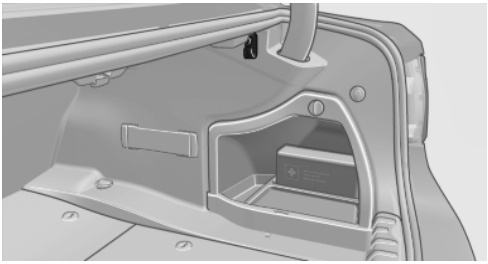
Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Right storage compartment

Located on the right side is a storage compartment for the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 279, and first aid kit, refer to page 291.

Hooks/multi-function hook



A multi-function hook is located on each side of the cargo area. The multi-function hooks can be loaded up to a max. of 8.8 lbs/4 kg.

Light and suitable objects only

Only hang light bags or suitable objects from the holders. Otherwise, there is a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers.

Only transport heavy luggage in the trunk if it has been appropriately secured.◄

Retaining strap

A retaining strap is available on the right side trim for fastening small objects.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

To secure the cargo, refer to page 160, there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Floor net

The floor net can also be used to Secure the load, refer to page 160, and to store small parts.

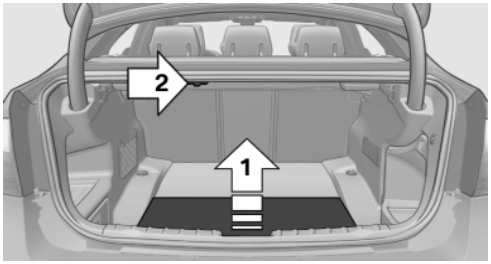
Storage compartment under cargo floor panel

Maximum load

To avoid damage to the vehicle, do not exceed a maximum permitted load of 44 lbs/20 kg in the storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Raise the cargo floor panel, arrow 1, and latch at top, if necessary, arrow 2.

Partitioning the compartment

The compartment can be divided using an attachable partition.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to be broken in to adjust to each other.

The following instructions will help achieve a long vehicle life and good economy.

Engine and differential

Always obey the official speed limit.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine, 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode for the initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/ 300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and discs. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

The same breaking in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Drive with the trunk lid closed

Only drive with the tailgate closed; otherwise, in the event of an accident or braking or evasive maneuvers, passengers or other road users may be injured or the vehicle may be damaged. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the passenger compartment.◀

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the blower speed.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

Hot exhaust system

High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PARTS

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◄

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

It is advised that you do not use mobile communication devices, e.g., mobile phones, inside the vehicle without connecting them directly to the external antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be discharged from the vehicle interior.◄

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning.◄

Driving through water

Drive though calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 6 mph/10 km/h.

Adhere to water depth and speed limitations

Do not exceed this water depth and walking speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◄

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations when this is necessary.

The vehicle maintains steering responsiveness. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Objects in the area around the pedals

No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.◄

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat, resulting in a reduction in the brake system efficiency.

Automatic transmission:

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down in the manual mode of the automatic transmission.

Avoid load on the brakes

Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◄

Do not drive in neutral

Do not drive in neutral or with the engine stopped, as doing so disables engine braking. In addition, steering and brake assist is unavailable with the engine stopped.◄

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Therefore, traces of condensed water under the vehicle are normal.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Loading

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Overloading the vehicle

To avoid exceeding the approved carrying capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure.◄

No fluids in the trunk

Make sure that fluids do not leak into the trunk; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.◄

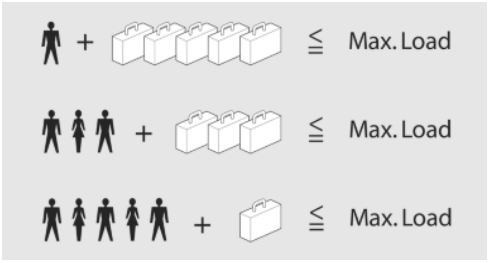
Determining the load limit



1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:
 ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

 For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

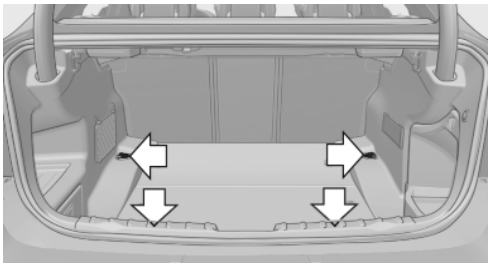
Stowing cargo



- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the cargo area separating wall.
- Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- Cover sharp edges and corners.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Place protective material around any sharp-edged or pointed objects that could bump against the rear window while the vehicle is in motion.

Securing cargo

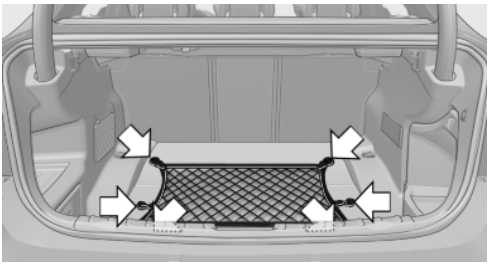
Lashing eyes in the cargo area



To secure the cargo, there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area

Floor net

The floor net can also be used to Secure the load and to store small parts.



Hook the floor net into the fittings in the cargo area floor.

Securing cargo

- Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps, the floor net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.

Attach the cargo straps, retaining straps or draw straps to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Securing cargo

Always position and secure the cargo as described above; otherwise, it can endanger the car's occupants if sudden braking or swerving becomes necessary.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car; otherwise, they could be thrown around as a result of hard braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.◄

Roof-mounted luggage rack

Note

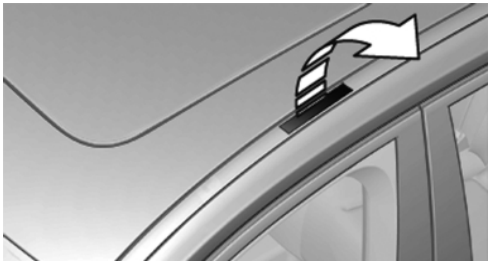
Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Attachment

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Roof drip rail with flaps



The anchorage points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.

Fold the cover outward.

Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not be too large in area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and looking ahead reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid high engine speeds

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle in motion. Beginning with 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

The gear shift indicator of your vehicle indicates the most fuel efficient gear.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

On a downhill gradient, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Fuel savings are achieved after the vehicle is switched off for only approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle economy and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 277.

ECO PRO

The concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort functions, e. g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions can be displayed that assist in driving in a manner that optimizes fuel consumption.

The extension of the range that is achieved as a result can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating ECO PRO



Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display in the instrument cluster

ECO PRO bonus range



An extension of the range can be achieved by an adjusted driving style.

This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

Driving style



In the tachometer, a mark in the bar display indicates the current efficiency of the driving style corresponding to the accelerator pedal position.

- Blue display: efficient driving style as long as the mark moves within the blue range.
- Gray display: adjust driving style, e. g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

The display switches to blue as soon as all conditions for fuel-economy-optimized driving are met.

ECO PRO Tip - driving instruction



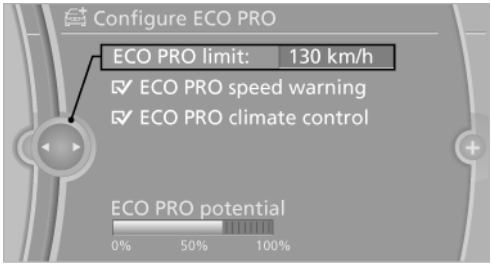
The arrow indicates that the driving style can be adjusted to be more fuel efficient by backing off the accelerator.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Measure
	For efficient driving style, back off the accelerator.
km/h	Reduce speed to the selected ECO PRO speed.
D	Automatic transmission: switch from S to D or avoid manual shift interventions.
	Manual shift transmission: follow shifting instructions.
N	Manual shift transmission: engage neutral for engine stop.

Configuring ECO PRO

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure ECO PRO"
4. Configure the program.



ECO PRO Tip

- "ECO PRO limit:":

 Set ECO Pro speed at which an ECO PRO Tip is to be displayed.
- "ECO PRO speed warning":

 A reminder is displayed if the set ECO PRO speed is exceeded.

ECO PRO climate control

"ECO PRO climate control"

The climate control is adjusted to be fuel-efficient.

The following settings are optimized:

- Cooling or heat output of the automatic climate control
- Exterior mirror heating
- Seat heating

ECO PRO Potential

The percentage of potential savings that can be achieved with the current configuration is displayed.

Indications on the Control Display

EfficientDynamics

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed during driving.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "EfficientDynamics"

Displaying fuel consumption history

The average fuel consumption can be displayed within an adjustable time frame.

"Consumption history"

Adjusting fuel consumption history time frame

Select the symbol.

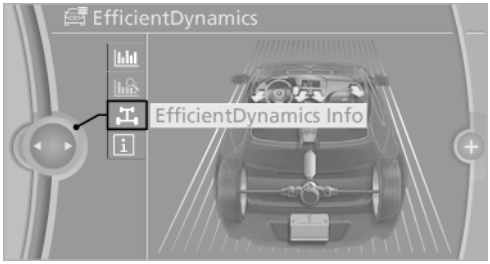
Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Resetting fuel consumption history

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Reset consumption history"

Displaying EfficientDynamics info

The current efficiency can be displayed.



"EfficientDynamics Info"

The following systems are displayed:

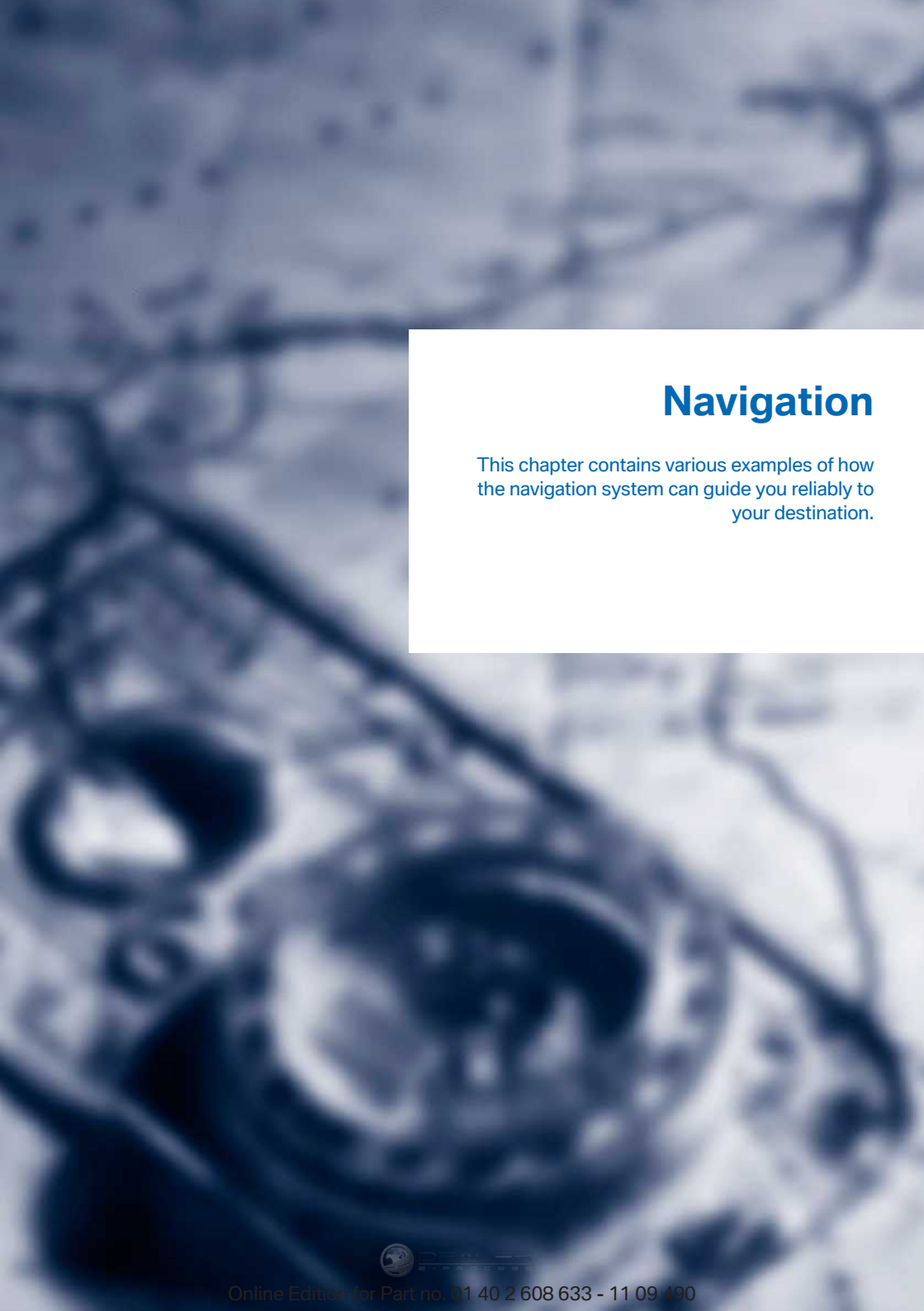
- Automatic engine start/stop function.
- Energy recovery.
- Climate control output.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Information Provided by:
DEALER
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Navigation

This chapter contains various examples of how the navigation system can guide you reliably to your destination.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Navigation system

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Entries in stationary vehicle

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◄

Starting navigation system

1. MENU Press the button on the controller.
2. "Navigation"

NAV The navigation system can also be accessed directly with the button on the controller.

Destination input

Manual destination entry

General information

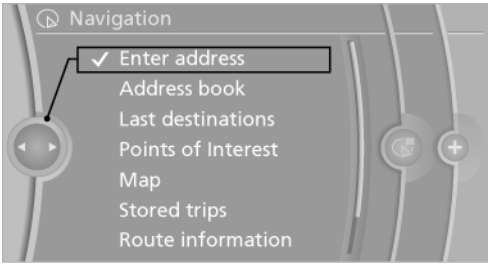
The system supports you in entering street names and house numbers by automatically completing the entry and providing entry comparisons, refer to page 22.

Stored town/city and street names can be called up quickly.

- If the existing entries should not be changed, the entries for the state/province and town/city can be skipped.
- Destination guidance is started to the town/city center if no street is entered.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"

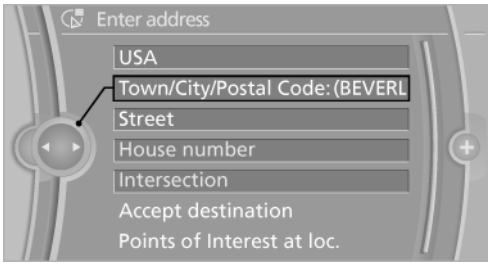


3. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if necessary.

 The list is narrowed down further with each entry.
3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the town/city name from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. 1@+ Select the symbol.
3. Select the numbers.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the entry.
6. Selecting an entry.

Entering a street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street.
3. Select the street.

Alternative: enter the street address and house number

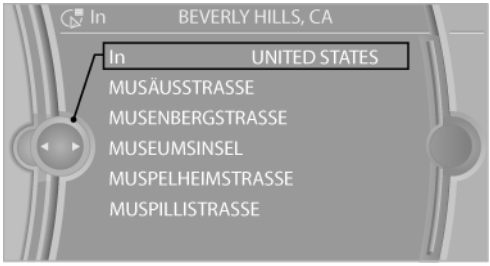
1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter the street as you would the town/city.
3. "House number"
4. Select the numbers.
5. Change to the list of house numbers.
6. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Street does not exist in the destination city/town

The desired street does not exist in the specified city/town because it belongs to another part of the city/town.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" the displayed country.

 All streets of the selected state/province are offered. The associated town/city is displayed after the street name.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street.
9. Select the street.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

 Add, refer to page 175, a destination as a further destination.

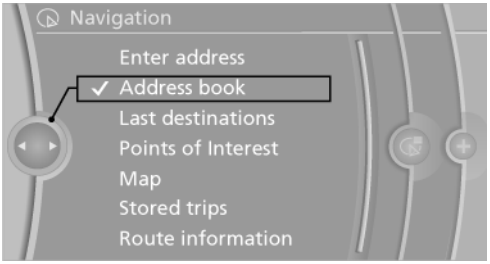
Address book

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

 Contacts with addresses are displayed if these have been checked as destinations.

 If the mobile phone does not display the contacts with addresses, they must first be checked as a destination, refer to page 248.

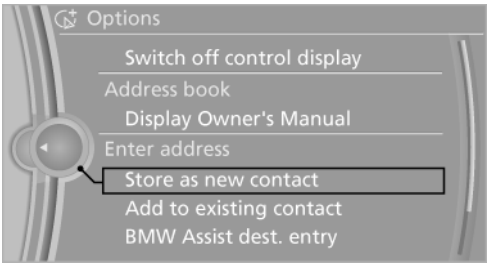


3. Select a contact in the list or, if desired, with "A-Z search".
4. "Business address" or "Home address"

Storing the destination in the address book

After entering the destination, store the destination in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Guidance"
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

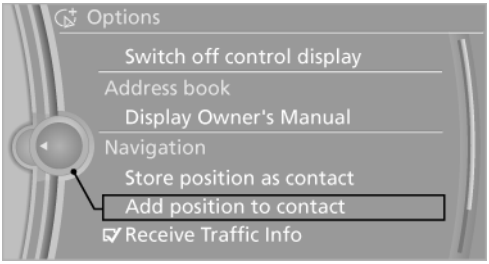


6. Select an existing contact, if available.
7. "Business address" or "Home address"
8. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
9. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

The current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact"



4. Depending on the selection, choose an existing contact from the list. Select the type of address and enter the first and last names.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

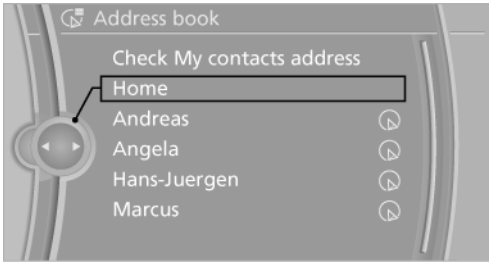
Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. Highlight the entry.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry"

Using the home address as the destination

The home address must be stored. Specify the home address, refer to page 247.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

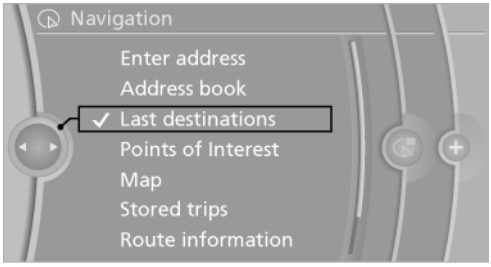
At a glance

The destinations previously entered are stored automatically.

The destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Calling up the last destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations"

Special destinations

General information

Even with the most current navigation data, information regarding particular individual destinations may have changed. For instance, certain gas stations may not be operating.

Opening the search for special destinations

To select special destinations, e.g., hotels or tourist attractions:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. Select the search function.

Online Search

1. "Google™ Local Search"
2. Select a special destination.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. Select the symbol.
4. "Start guidance"

A-Z search

1. "A-Z search"
2. "Town/City"

 Select or enter the town/city.
3. "Category"
4. Select the category.
5. "Category details"

 For some special destinations, multiple category details can be selected. Move the controller to the left to leave the category details.
6. "Keyword"
7. Enter the keyword.

 A list of the special destinations is displayed.
8. Select a special destination.

 Details are displayed.

 If multiple details are stored, you can leaf through the pages.

 If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.
9. Select the symbol.

 "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

 Add, refer to page 175, a destination as a further destination.

"Start search": if a search term is not entered, the search is repeated with the previous search term.

Category search

1. "Category search"
2. "Town/City"

 Select or enter the town/city.
3. "Category"
4. Select the category.
5. "Category details"

 For some special destinations, multiple category details can be selected. Move the controller to the left to leave the category details.
6. "Start search"

 A list of the special destinations is displayed.
7. Select a special destination.

 Details are displayed.

 If multiple details are stored, you can leaf through the pages.

 If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.
8. Select the symbol.

 "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

 Add, refer to page 175, a destination as a further destination.

Display of special destinations

List of special destinations: special destinations are organized by distance and are displayed with a directional arrow to the special destination.

On the split screen, special destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The display depends on the scale of the map and the category.

Destination entry via BMW Assist

A connection is established to the Concierge service, refer to page 251.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map view:

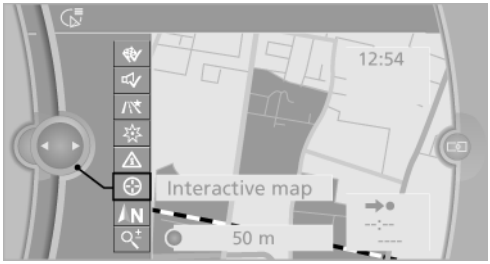
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Display Points of Interest"
5. Select the setting.

Destination entry by map

Selecting the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

 The current position of the vehicle is indicated on the map.
3. "Interactive map"



4. Select the destination with crosshairs.
 - To change the scale: turn the controller.
 - To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
 - To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

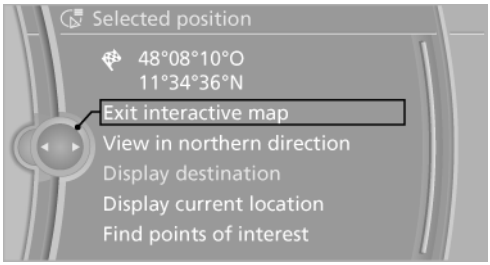
Specifying the street

If the system does not recognize a street, one of the following is displayed:

- The name of a street nearby.
- The county.
- The coordinates of the destination.

Additional functions

Additional functions are available on the interactive map after the controller is pressed.



- Select the symbol.

 "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
- "Exit interactive map": return to the map view.
- "View in northern direction" or "View in driving direction"
- "Display destination": the map section around the destination is displayed.
- "Display current location": the map section around your current location is displayed.
- "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Destination entry by voice

General information

- Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 23.
- When making a destination entry by voice, you can change between voice operation and iDrive.
- To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries

- The town/city, street, and house number can be entered as a single command.
- Countries, towns and cities, streets, and intersections can be said as whole words or

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

spelled in the language of the system. Set the language, refer to page 84.

Example: to enter a town/city in a US state as a whole word, the language of the system must be English.

- ▷ Spell the entry if the spoken language and the language of the system differ.
- ▷ Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.
- ▷ The options available for entering data depend on the navigation data and the country and language settings.

Entering an address in a command

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Say the address in the suggested order.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g., the town/city.

Entering a town/city separately

The name of the town/city can be said as a word or spelled out.

With the destination entry menu displayed:

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
3. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
4. Say the name of the town/city, or say at least the first three letters.

 Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.
5. Select the town/city.
 - ▷ To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
 - ▷ To select a different town/city: ›New entry‹
 - ▷ Select an entry: ›Entry ...‹ e.g., entry 2
 - ▷ To spell an entry: ›Spell city‹
6. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

Towns/cities of the same name are grouped in a list and displayed as one location followed by an ellipsis.

1. Select an entry: ›Yes‹ or ›Entry ...‹ e.g., entry 2.
2. Select the desired town/city.

Entering a street or intersection separately

Enter a street and intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

Entering a house number separately

Depending on the data in the navigation system, house numbers up to number 2,000 can be entered.

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

 Say each digit separately.
3. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

Planning a trip with intermediate destinations

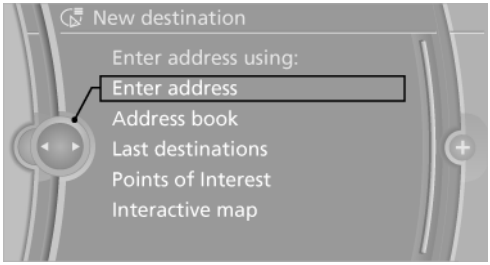
New trip

A trip can be planned with several intermediate destinations.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4. "Guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry.



7. Enter the intermediate destination.
8. "Start guidance"

Entering intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry.
3. Enter the intermediate destination.
4. "Add as another destination"

 The intermediate destination is entered in the destination list and is highlighted.
5. Turn the controller until the intermediate destination is located in the desired position in the list.
6. Press the controller.

Starting the trip

1. After all intermediate destinations are entered, highlight the first destination.

 If the second destination, for example, is highlighted when destination guidance is started, the first destination is skipped.
2. "Start guidance"

 This symbol marks the active leg of the trip.

Storing a trip

Up to 30 trips can be stored in the trip list. If necessary, delete existing trips to be able to store new trips.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the name.
4. "OK"

Selecting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select a stored trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Reversing the direction of travel

Intermediate destinations are displayed in reverse order in the list.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Intermediate destination options

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip destinations"
4. Select an intermediate destination.
 - "Edit destination"
 - "Reposition dest. in the trip": move an intermediate destination to another position in the list.
 - "Delete dest. in the trip"
 - "Go to next dest. in the trip"

Some options are not available for certain trips.

Deleting a stored trip

1. "Stored trips"
2. Highlight the desired trip.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PUBLICATIONS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip"

Calling up the last trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. "Last trip"
4. "Start guidance"

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Make a destination entry, refer to page 168.
3. "Accept destination"
4. "Start guidance"

▷ The route is shown on the Control Display.

▷ The distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed in the map view.

▷ The arrow view is shown in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display, and on the Control Display where appropriate.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Guidance"
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

▷ The route calculated can be influenced by selecting certain criteria.

▷ The route criteria can be changed when the destination is entered and during destination guidance.

▷ Road types are part of the navigation data and are taken into consideration when planning a route, such as when avoiding highways.

▷ The recommended route may differ from the route you would take based on personal experience.

▷ The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

▷ Destination guidance with traffic bulletins, refer to page 182.

Changing the route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Select the criterion:

▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads.

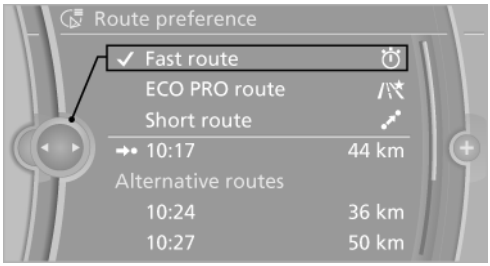
▷ "ECO PRO route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest route.

▷ "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be.

▷ "Alternative routes": if available, alternative routes are suggested during active route guidance.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

The individual suggestions are highlighted in color.



5. Specify additional criteria for the route, if necessary:
 - ▷ "Avoid highways": highways are avoided wherever possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid toll roads": toll roads are avoided wherever possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid ferries": ferries are avoided where possible.

Route

Different views of the route are available during destination guidance:

- ▷ Arrow view in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
- ▷ List of route sections.
- ▷ Map view, refer to page 178.
- ▷ Arrow view in the Head-up Display.

Arrow view

The following information is displayed during destination guidance:

- ▷ Large arrow: current direction of travel.
- ▷ Street name of the currently traveled street.
- ▷ Small arrow: indicates the next change in direction.
- ▷ Intersection view.
- ▷ Lane information.
- ▷ Traffic bulletins.
- ▷ Distance to the next change in direction.
- ▷ Street name at the next change in direction.

Lane information

On multi-lane roads, the recommended lanes are marked in the arrow view by a triangle.

- ▷ Solid triangle: best lane.
- ▷ Empty triangle: possible lane. However, another lane change may be needed shortly.

Displaying list of route sections

When the destination guidance is activated, a list of route sections can be displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

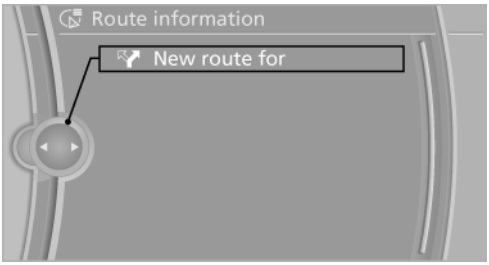
1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight route section.

 The route section is displayed on the split screen.

Bypassing a section of the route

Calculate a new route for a route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for"



4. Turn the controller. Enter the number of miles within which you would like to return to the original route.
5. Press the controller.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PUBLISHER

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"
4. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendation

The remaining range is calculated, and if necessary gas stations along the route are displayed.

Even with the most current navigation data, information regarding individual gas stations may have changed. For instance, certain gas stations may not be operating.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"

 A list of the gas stations is displayed.
4. Highlight a gas station.

 The position of the gas station is displayed on the split screen.
5. Select the gas station.
6. Select the symbol.
7. "Start guidance": destination guidance to the selected gas station is started.

 "Add as another destination": the gas station is added to the route.

Switching spoken instructions on/off

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Voice instructions"

Repeating spoken instructions

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Volume of spoken instructions

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

Saving the spoken instructions on the programmable memory buttons

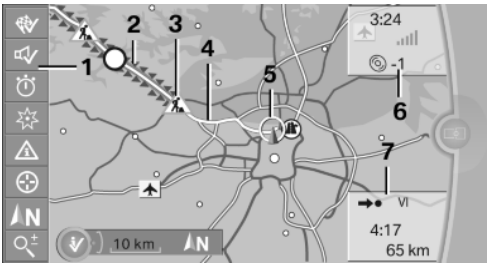
The function for switching the spoken instructions on/off can be stored on a programmable memory button, refer to page 21, for quick access.

Map view

Selecting the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

At a glance



1 Function bar
2 Route section with traffic obstruction
3 Traffic sign for traffic obstruction
4 Planned route
5 Current location
6 Upper status field
7 Lower status field

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Lines in the map

Streets and routes are displayed in different colors and styles depending on their classification. Dashed lines represent railways and ferry connections. Country borders are indicated by thin lines.

Traffic obstructions

Small triangles along the planned route indicate route sections with traffic obstructions, depending on the map scale. The direction of the triangles indicates the direction of the obstruction.

The traffic signs indicate the significance of the obstruction.

- Red traffic sign: the obstruction affects the planned route or direction.
- Gray traffic sign: the obstruction does not affect the planned route or direction.

Traffic bulletins, refer to page 180.

Planned route

After destination guidance is started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

Status fields

Show/hide: press the controller.

- Upper status field: time, telephone, and entertainment details.
- Lower status field: symbol for active destination guidance, status of traffic bulletins, time of arrival, and distance to destination.

Function bar

The following functions are available in the function bar:

Symbol	Function
	Start/end destination guidance.
	Switch spoken instructions on/off.
	Change the route criteria.
	Search for a special destination.
	Display traffic bulletins.
	Interactive map.
N	Set the map view.
	Change the scale.

To change to the function bar, move the controller to the left.

Changing the map section

"Interactive map"

- To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
- To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. To change the scale: turn the controller.

Automatically scaled map scale

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until the AUTO scale is displayed. The map shows the entire route between the current location and the destination.

Settings for the map view

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Settings"

Set the map view.

- "Day/night mode"

 Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

"Traffic conditions/gray map" active: the setting is disregarded.

- "Satellite images"

 Depending on availability and resolution, satellite images are displayed in a scale of approx. 1 mile to 600 miles/2 km to 1,000 km.

- "Perspective view in 3D"

 Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.

- "Traffic conditions/gray map"

 The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins, refer to page 180. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Map view for split screen

The map view can be selected for the split screen independently from the main screen.

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen is selected.
4. Select "Split screen content" or the scale.
5. Select the map view.
 - "Arrow display"
 - "Map facing north"
 - "Map direction of travel"
 - "Map view with perspective"
 - "Position"
 - "Exit ramp view": selected blind driveways are displayed three dimensionally.

 Setting in some cases will affect the display in the Head-Up Display.
 - "Traffic conditions/gray map"
6. To change the scale: select the split screen and turn the controller.

Traffic bulletins

At a glance

General information

- Display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TI Traffic Information of a traffic information service. Information on traffic obstructions and hazards is updated continuously.

 Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

 An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

 A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. (“Total Traffic Network”) holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. (“BMW NA”) and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

 B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

C. The licensed material is provided to licensee “as is,” and “where is”. Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. or BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

▷ The traffic bulletins are indicated on the map by symbols.

▷ The traffic bulletins for the surrounding area are stored in a list.

⚠ The symbol in the function bar of the map view turns red if there are traffic bulletins that affect the calculated route.

Switching the reception on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Receive Traffic Info"

Opening the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. ⚠ "Traffic Info"

 First the traffic bulletins for the calculated route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted by their distance from the current position of the vehicle.
4. Select a traffic bulletin.

 "More information": display additional information.
5. Scroll to the next or previous traffic bulletin if required.

Traffic bulletins on the map

General information

"Traffic conditions/gray map" Active: indication on the control display is switched to shades of gray. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. Day/night mode is not taken into account in this setting. Symbols and special destinations are not displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic conditions/gray map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction, and impact are displayed in the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

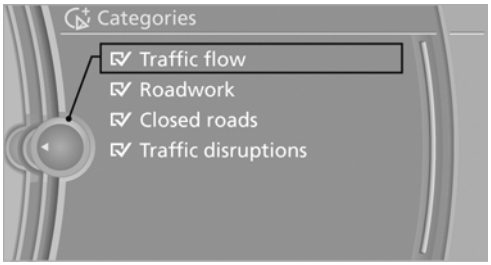
- Red: congestion.
- Orange: stop-and-go traffic.
- Yellow: heavy traffic.
- Green: clear roads.
- Gray: general traffic bulletins, e.g., construction site.

The displayed information depends on the particular traffic information service.

Filtering traffic bulletins

You can set which traffic bulletins appear on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.



Traffic bulletins of the selected category are displayed on the map.

- Traffic bulletins that are relevant to the route are always shown.
- For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Destination guidance with traffic bulletins

General information

Detour suggestions from the navigation system can be manually accepted in the semi-dynamic destination guidance. In the dynamic destination guidance, they are automatically accepted in the route guidance.

Semi-dynamic destination guidance

When traffic bulletin reception is switched on, semi-dynamic destination guidance is active.

The destination guidance system takes the available traffic information into account. A message is displayed depending on the route, the traffic bulletins, and the possible detour routes. When there is a traffic obstruction, if possible, a detour is offered.

The top part of the message displays:

- The symbol of the first traffic obstruction, including the distance at which the traffic obstruction first occurs, if applicable.
- The overall length of the traffic obstructions on the route.
- The extended driving time due to the traffic obstructions.

The bottom part of the message displays:

- The recommended detour with the distance remaining until the detour starts.
- The difference in the route length compared to the original route.
- Time gained using the detour compared to the original route with the traffic obstructions.

With the Professional navigation system: in addition to displaying the original route in white, the split screen also displays the detour.

Accepting the detour

"Detour"

In the event of special hazards, e. g., objects on the road, a message is displayed without a detour suggestion.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Detours can also be accepted if the traffic messages are called up in the list.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Traffic Info"
4. "Detour information"
5. "Detour"

Dynamic destination guidance

The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions.

- The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.
- Traffic bulletins continue to be displayed on the map.
- Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.
- Dangerous situations are displayed regardless of the setting.

Activating dynamic destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Dynamic guidance"

Navigation data

Information on the navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Navigation system version": information on the data version is displayed.

Updating the navigation data

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Current navigation data and the authorization code are available from your service center.

- Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.
- Update during the trip to preserve battery.
- During the update, only the basic functions of the navigation system are available.
- The status of the update can be viewed.
- The system restarts after the update.
- Remove the data carrier with the navigation data after the update.

Performing an update

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the navigation DVD authorization code.
4. Change the DVD, if necessary.

After interrupting your trip, follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Viewing the status

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Navigation update"

What to do if...

- The current transmission position cannot be displayed?

 The vehicle is located in an unrecognized region, is in a poor reception area, or the system is currently determining the position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.
- The destination without street information is not used for route guidance?

 When city has been input, no downtown can be determined.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Input any street in the selected city and start destination guidance.

▷ The destination is not used for route guidance?

The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.

▷ Letters for destination input cannot be selected?

The stored data do not contain the data of the destination.

Select a goal that is as close as possible to the original.

▷ Is the map displayed in shades of gray?

"Traffic conditions/gray map" Active: indication on the control display is switched to shades of gray. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.

▷ Spoken instructions are no longer output during route guidance in front of intersections?

The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

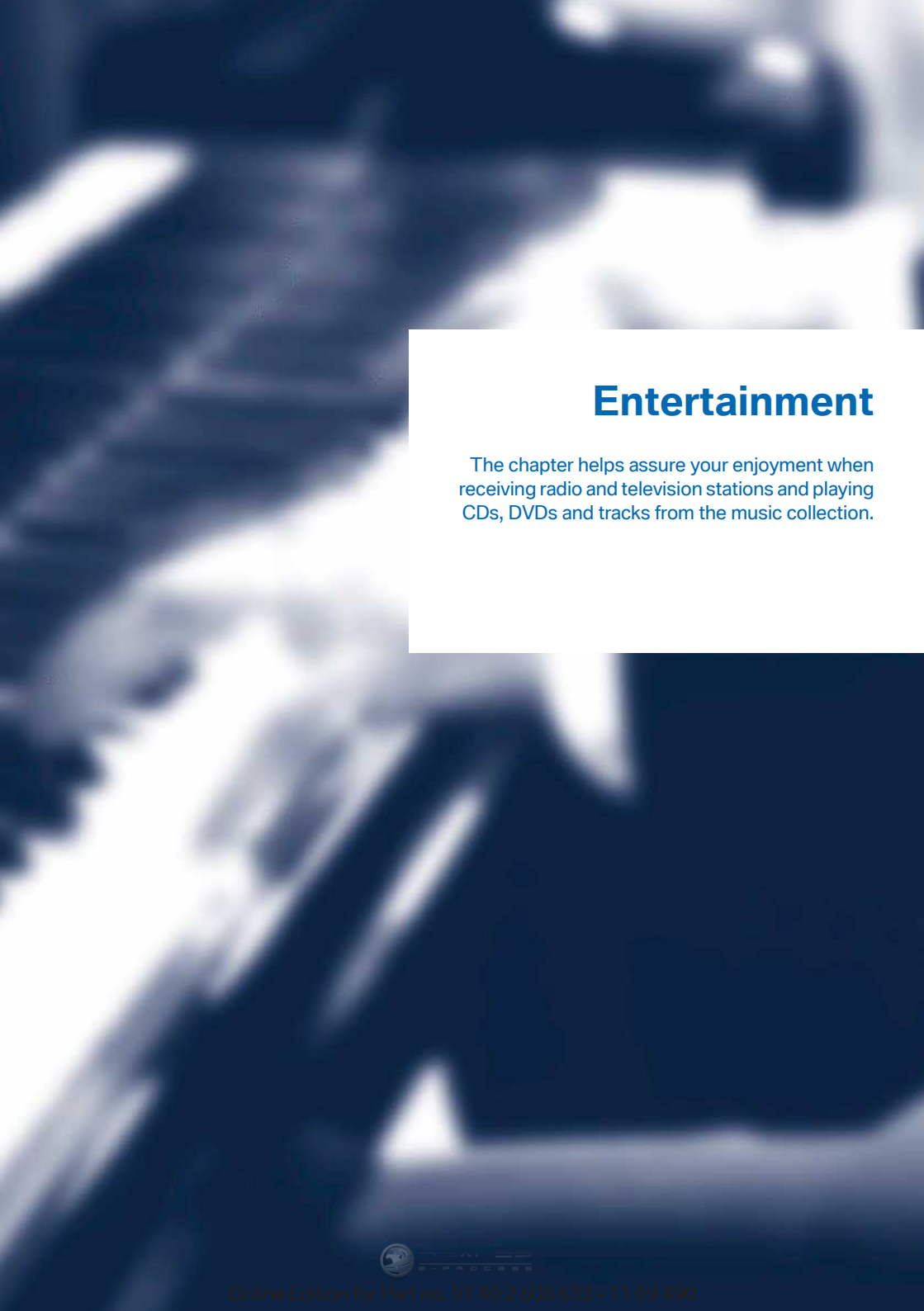
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Entertainment

The chapter helps assure your enjoyment when receiving radio and television stations and playing CDs, DVDs and tracks from the music collection.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Tone

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

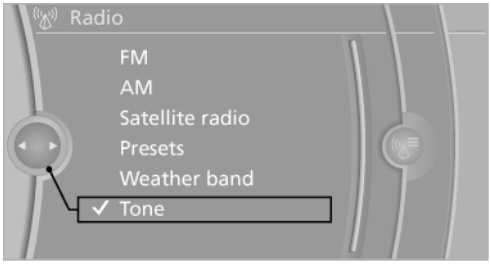
The sound settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, and fader

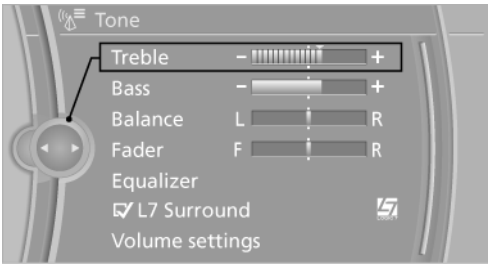
- "Treble": treble adjustment.
- "Bass": depth adjustment.
- "Balance": left/right volume distribution.
- "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.

Setting treble, bass, balance, and fader

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone settings.



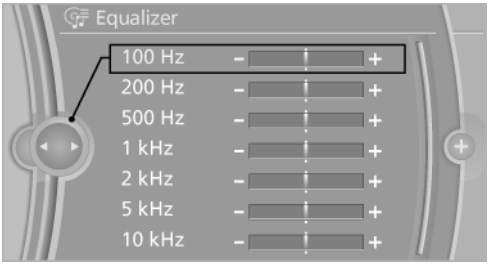
4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To store: press the controller.

Equalizer

Setting for individual audio frequency ranges.

Adjusting the equalizer

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

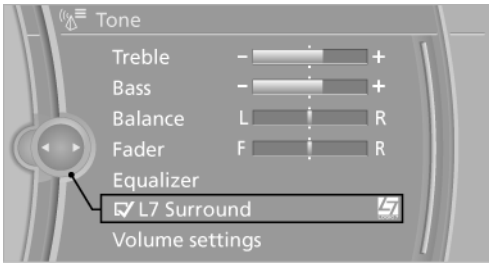
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Multi-channel playback, surround

Choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

Setting multi-channel playback, surround

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "L7 Surround"



When surround is activated, multi-channel playback is simulated when a stereo audio track is played.

LOGIC7 and LOGIC7 logo are registered trademarks of Lexicon, Inc., a Harman International Group company.

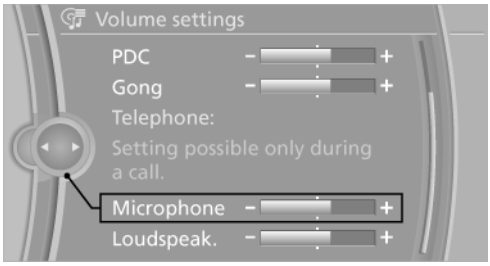
Volume

- "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.
- "PDC": volume of the PDC signal compared to the entertainment sound output.
- "Gong": volume of the signal, e. g., the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output.
- "Microphone": volume of the microphone during a phone call.
- "Loudspeak.": volume of the loudspeakers during a phone call.

The following volumes are only stored for the respective paired telephone: "Microphone", "Loudspeak.".

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting the tone settings

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

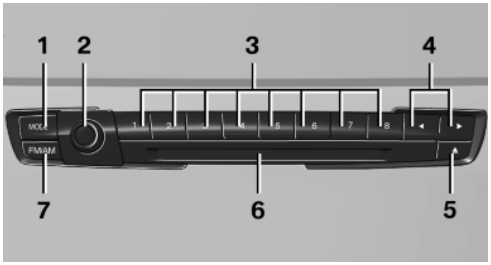
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Radio

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Controls



1 Change entertainment sources
2 Volume, on/off
3 Programmable memory buttons or radio station buttons
4 Change station/track
5 Eject CD/DVD
6 CD/DVD drive
7 Change wave band

Sound output

Switching on/off

When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.

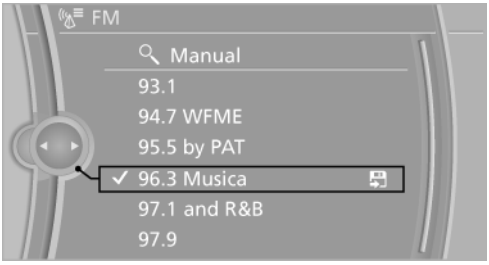
Muting

When the ignition is switched on or the engine is running: press the ON/OFF button on the radio.

AM/FM station

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.



All saved stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing the station



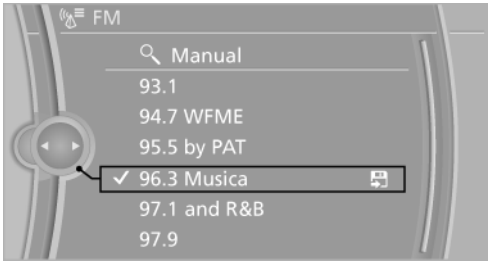
Press the button.

Storing a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

3. Highlight the desired station.



4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

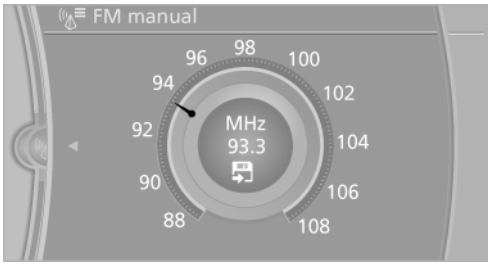
The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

With navigation system: the stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 21.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. To select the frequency: turn the controller.



To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

Renaming a station

A station with changing station names can be renamed.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Rename to:"

 If necessary, wait until the desired name appears.

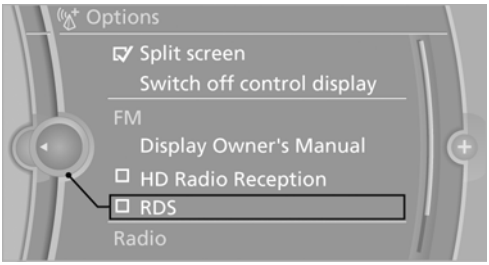
The selected station name is copied to the list of current stations and stored stations.

RDS

RDS broadcasts additional information, such as the station name, in the FM wave band.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio™ reception

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U. S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed in the status line when the audio signal is digital.

When setting a station with a digital signal, it may take a few seconds before the station plays in HD quality.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

This symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. Station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

When reception is poor, the substation is muted.

Satellite radio

General information

The channels are offered in predefined packages. The packages must be enabled by telephone.

Navigation bar overview

Symbol	Function
	Change the list view.
	Select the category.
	Direct channel entry
	Timeshift
	Open the My Favorites category/ open a favorite.
	Manage the favorites.
	Traffic Jump

With navigation system: the functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 21.

They are stored.

Managing a subscription

To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Enabling channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"

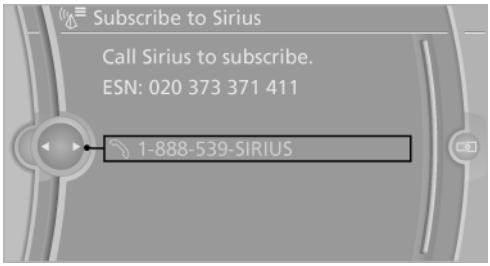
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

3. "Category"



4. Select the Unsubscribed Channels category.
5. Select the desired channel.

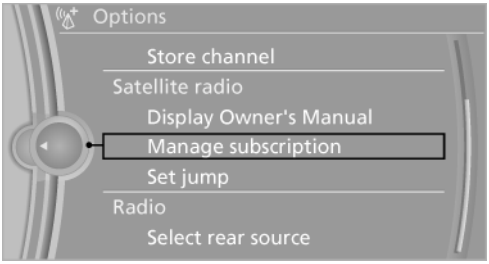
 The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Call the phone number to have the channel enabled.



You can unsubscribe from the channels again via this phone number.

Unsubscribing from channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Manage subscription"



5. The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Call Sirius to unsubscribe from the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to enabled channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.



Via the buttons on the center console



Press the button.

The next channel is selected.

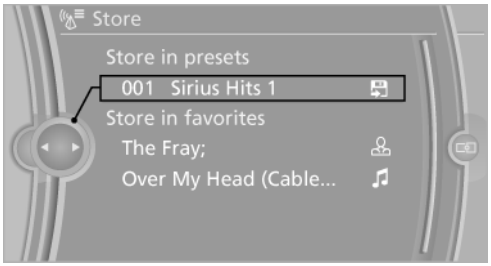
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Via direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Set channel"
4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Press the controller again to confirm the highlighted channel.



7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

With navigation system: the stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 21.

Changing the list view

The list view changes every time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information on the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Meaning
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

Selecting a category

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

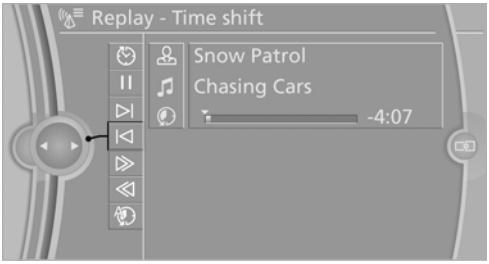
Timeshift

Approx. one hour of the program being broadcast on the channel currently being listened to is stored in a buffer. Prerequisite: the signal must be available.

The stored audio track can be played with a delay following the live broadcast. When the buffer is full, the older tracks are overwritten. The buffer is cleared when a new channel is selected.

Opening the timeshift function

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"



▷ The red arrow shows the current playback position.

▷ The time difference to the live broadcast is displayed next to the buffer bar.

For live transmissions: "live".

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Timeshift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to the live broadcast
▷ ❙❙	Playback/pause
▷\|	Next track
\|◁	Previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse
	Automatic timeshift deactivated/activated

Automatic timeshift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

- Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.
- Activation of the voice activation system.
- Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time delay.

To activate:

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"
4. "Automatic time shift"

To deactivate: "Automatic time shift".

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Available favorites are artist, track, game, league, and team.

Storing the artist, track, or game

It is only possible to store favorites that are currently being broadcast. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select the artist, track, or game.

Storing the league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Manage favorites"
4. "Add sports information"



5. Select the league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or the desired team.

Opening the favorites

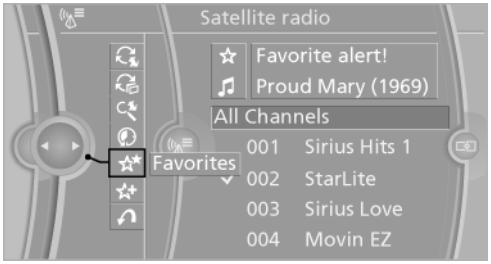
If an activated favorite is played back, the following message appears for approx. 20 seconds: "Favorite alert!".

"Favorites"

Select the symbol while the message is shown.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



The displayed favorite is played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing the favorites

Activating/deactivating the favorites

Favorites can be activated and deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or the desired favorites.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the desired favorite.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region is broadcast every few minutes.

Selecting a region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Set jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating the jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Jump to:"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

A new panel opens.

Canceling the Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
	Information will be broadcast shortly.
	Information is currently being broadcast.

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius performs an update of the channel names and positions. The update takes place automatically and may take several minutes.

Notes

- Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
- The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages; next to tall buildings; or near trees, mountains or other powerful sources of radio interference.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Stored stations

General information

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"



4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

With navigation system and telephone: The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 21.

Without navigation system and telephone: On radio station buttons

1. Select the desired station.
2. 1…8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

In order to call up a stored station, briefly press corresponding button.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Delete entry"

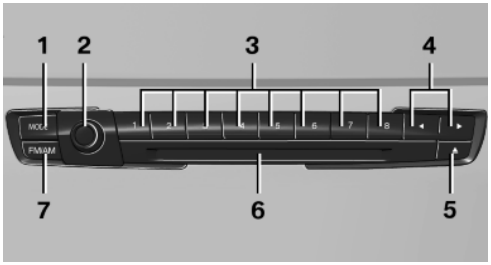
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

CD/multimedia

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Controls



1 Change entertainment sources
2 Volume, on/off
3 Programmable memory buttons or radio station buttons
4 Change station/track
5 Eject CD/DVD
6 CD/DVD drive
7 Change wave band

Sound output

Switching on/off

When the ignition is switched off: press ON/OFF button on the radio.

Muting

When the ignition is switched on or the engine is running: press the ON/OFF button on the radio.

CD/DVD

Playback

Loading the CD/DVD player

Insert the CD/DVD with the printed side up.

Playback begins automatically.

Reading can take a few minutes with compressed audio files.

Starting playback

A CD/DVD is located in the CD/DVD player or DVD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.



Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player
1 ... 6	DVD changer

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Playable formats

- DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video.
- CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD, SVCD.
- Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC, M4A.

CD/DVD removal

1.  Press the button.
 The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
2. Remove the CD/DVD.

Audio playback

Selecting the track using the button

 Press the button repeatedly until the desired track is played.

Selecting a track via iDrive

Audio CDs

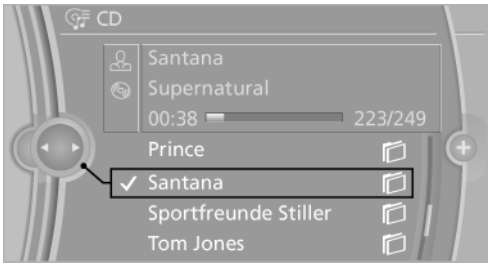


Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

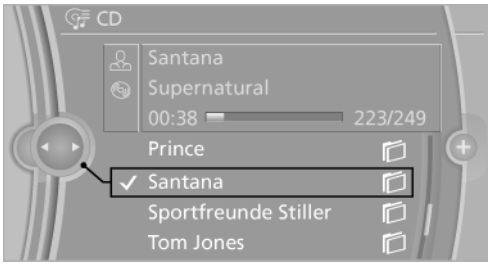
1. Select the directory if necessary.
 To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.



2. Select the desired track to begin playback.



Displaying information on the track



If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

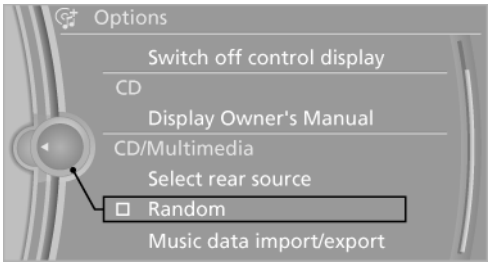
- Interpret.
- Album track.
- Number of tracks on the CD/DVD.
- File name of track.

Random playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Random"



All tracks of the CD/DVD are played back in random order.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button.

Automatic repeat

The selected CDs or DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on the DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Playback

The video image is displayed on the front Control Display up to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h; in some countries, it is only displayed if the parking brake is set or if the automatic transmission is in position P.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. DVD "DVD menu"



VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD with video content.
4. "Select track"
5. Select the desired track.

Video menu

To open the video menu: turn the controller during playback.

Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu.
▷	Start playback.
❙❙	Pause
□	Stop
▷\|	Next chapter

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Symbol	Function
⏮	Previous chapter
⏭	Fast forward
⏪	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"
 The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.
3. To select menu items: move the controller and press it.

To change to the video menu: turn the controller and press it.

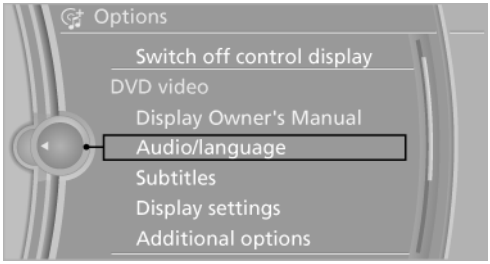
DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on the DVD.

Selecting the language

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"

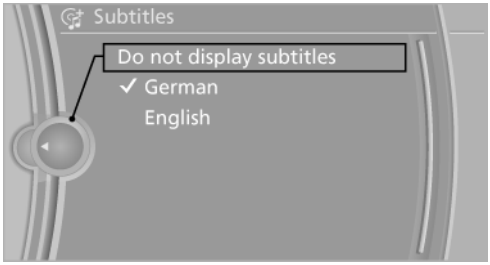


4. Select the desired language.

Selecting the subtitles

The subtitles that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".



Setting the brightness, contrast and color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

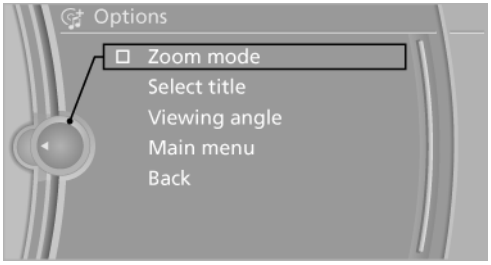


5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Selecting the zoom

Display the video image on the entire screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



Selecting a track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller when the DVD menu is displayed.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Selecting the camera angle

The availability of a different camera angle depends on the DVD and the current DVD track.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

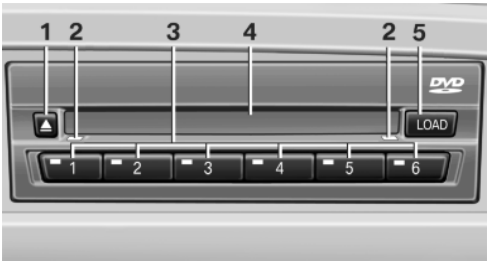
DVD changer

In the cargo area



The DVD changer is stored behind the left side trim in the cargo area.

Controls and displays



1 Empty DVD compartments
2 LED on DVD slot
3 Buttons for DVD compartments

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

4 DVD slot
5 Fill DVD compartments

Filling the DVD compartments individually

1. LOAD Press the button.
 The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.
2. Select another compartment if necessary.
3. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to flash.
4. Insert a single CD or DVD in the middle.
 The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the selected compartment.

Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◄

Filling all empty DVD compartments

1. LOAD Hold the button down.
 The LEDs on the empty CD compartments flash.
2. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to begin flashing and then insert each CD or DVD into the center of the slot.
 The CDs/DVDs are drawn in automatically and placed into the vacant compartments.

Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◄

After they are inserted, it may take several minutes for the CDs/DVDs to be read in.

Removing a single CD/DVD

1. Press the button.
2. Select the DVD compartment.
 The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
3. Remove the CD/DVD.

Removing all CDs/DVDs

1. Hold the button down.
2. Remove the CDs/DVDs.

Malfunctions

If the LEDs on the DVD slot and on the compartments are flashing rapidly, a malfunction has occurred.

To eliminate the malfunction:

1. Press one of the following buttons:
 - LOAD
 -
 The CD/DVD last inserted is ejected.
2. Remove the CD/DVD.

The DVD changer is functional again after the LEDs stop flashing rapidly.

Audio playback

The audio track of a DVD can be played back even if video playback is not possible in the vehicle.

Only the main film without the previews or extras can be played back.

Starting playback

A DVD is located in the DVD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. Select the desired DVD.

Selecting a chapter using the button



Press the button repeatedly until the desired chapter is played.

Selecting a chapter using iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Select the desired chapter.

Fast forward/reverse



Press and hold the button.

Selecting the language

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Audio/language"
6. Select the desired language.

Notes

CD/DVD player and changer



Do not remove the cover

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage may occur.◄

CDs and DVDs



Use of CDs/DVDs

- Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied, as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.

- Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g., single CDs; otherwise, the CDs or the adapter may jam and no longer eject.
- Do not use combined CDs/DVDs, e.g., DVD Plus, as the CDs/DVDs can jam and will no longer eject.◄

General malfunctions

- CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.
- If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens, and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions involving individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes:

Home-recorded CDs/DVDs

- Possible reasons for malfunctions with home-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the blank CD/DVD.
- Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Damage

- Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
- Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
- Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F/50 °C, high humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

DTS Digital Surround™

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent Numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & and other patents granted and registered in the USA and worldwide. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Music collection

Storing music

General information

Music tracks from CDs/DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection on a hard disc in the vehicle and played from there.

- Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. The WMA, MP3, M4A, and AAC formats are stored. Individual tracks and directories can be deleted later, Deleting a track and directory, refer to page 209.

 Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored but cannot be played back.

Backing up music data

Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disk.◀

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Storing from a CD/DVD

1. Insert a CD or DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"



The music collection is displayed and the first track of the CD/DVD is played back. During the storage process, the tracks are played in sequence.

Observe the following during the storage process:

Do not switch to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. "Storing..."



4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD/DVD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

Storing from a USB device

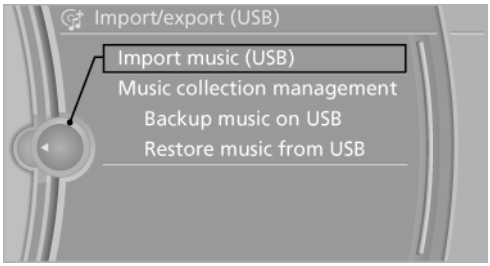
To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

- Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.
- Unsuitable devices: USB hard drives, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone. Music from the Apple iPod/iPhone can be played via the AUX-IN port in the center armrest.
- File systems: popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT 32 is the recommended format.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment, refer to page 149.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. "Options" Open.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"



Playing music

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album, refer to page 208.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"



4. Select the desired category.



5. Select the desired entry:
 - ▷ Select "A-Z search", refer to page 22, and input the desired entry.
 - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select other categories if you wish.

 The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.

 Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

 The list of tracks is repeated automatically.

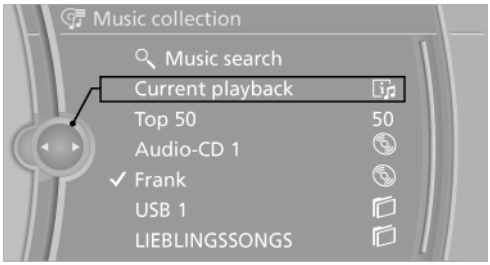
Restarting the music search

"New search"

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search, or the album that was selected last.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Current playback"



4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

The 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRO CODE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

 Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.



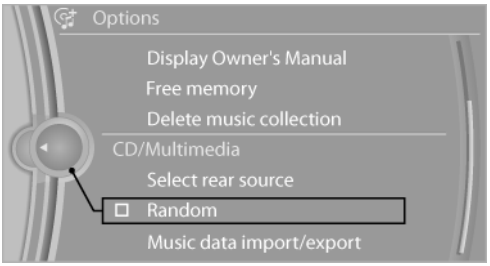
4. Change directories if needed to select tracks.

 To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.

Random playback

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"



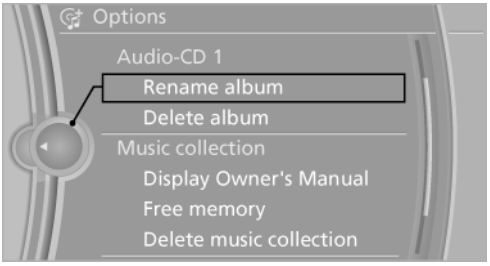
Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is not available, it can be changed later if desired.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"



6. Select the letters individually.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track and directory

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track"

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

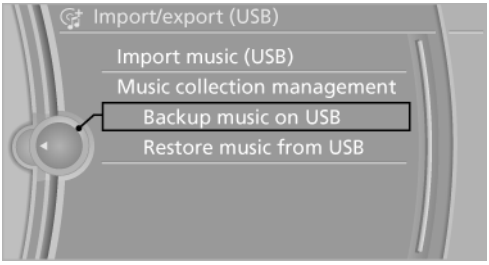
Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours.

Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Starting the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"



7. "Backup music on USB"



Storing the music collection in the vehicle

When storing from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

At a glance

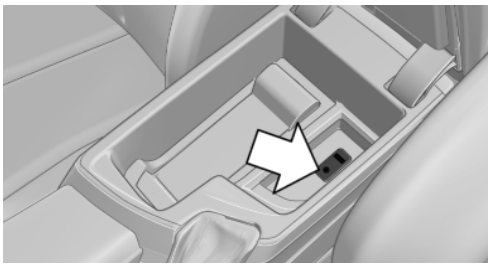
Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface
	Mobile phone audio interface
	Bluetooth audio

AUX-IN port

At a glance

- For connecting audio devices, e.g., MP3 player. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- Recommendation: use medium tone and volume settings on the audio device. The tone depends on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting



The AUX-IN port is located in the center armrest.

Connect the headphones or line-out connector of the device to the jack plug.

Playback

1. Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track on the audio device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. If necessary. "External devices".
4. "AUX front"

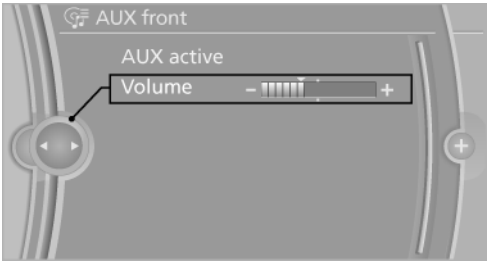
The sound is played back on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Volume

The volume of the sound output is dependent on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If necessary. "External devices".
3. "AUX front"
4. "Volume"



5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

USB audio interface/mobile phone audio interface

At a glance

It is possible to connect external audio devices. Operation can be performed via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Connectors for external devices

- Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- Connection via snap-in adapter when equipped with extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or mobile phones.

 Playback is only possible when there is no audio device attached to the AUX-IN port.

Due to the large number of different audio devices available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

Ask your service center about suitable audio devices/mobile phones.

Audio files

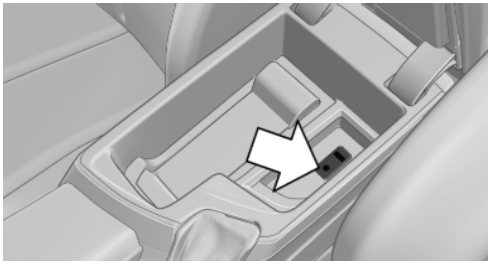
Standard audio files can be played back:

- MP3.
- WMA.
- WAV (PCM).
- AAC, M4A.
- Playback lists: M3U, WPL, PLS.

File systems

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT 32 is the recommended format.

Connection of Apple iPod/iPhone via USB audio interface



USB audio interface is located in the center armrest.

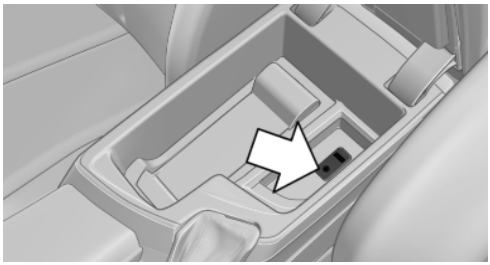
To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your service center, or a flexible adapter cable.



Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone with the AUX-IN port and USB interface using the special cable adapter or with the USB interface using the flexible adapter cable.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

Connection of a USB device via the USB audio interface



USB audio interface is located in the center armrest.

Connect using a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB audio interface and the USB device against physical damage.



Connect the USB device to the USB interface.

After connecting for the first time

Information on all music tracks, e.g. artist or type of music, as well as playback lists are transmitted into the vehicle. This may take some time, depending on the USB device and the number of tracks.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Number of tracks

Information from up to four USB devices or for approx. 16,000 or 36,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 16,000 or 36,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ψ or symbol.



The playback starts with the first track.

On the split screen, the CD cover for the music track might be displayed after a few seconds.

Track search

Selection is possible via:

- Playback lists.
- Information: type of music, artist, and, if available, composer, album, track.
- In addition, for USB devices: file directory and, if available, composer.

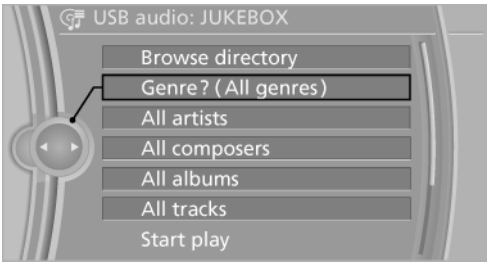
Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ψ or symbol.
4. "Search"
5. Select the desired category, e.g., "Genre" or "Artist".

 All entries are displayed in a list.

 - Open "A-Z search" and input the desired entry. When a letter is entered, the results are filtered using this letter as the first letter. If multiple letters are entered, all results that contain that sequence are displayed.
 - Select the desired entry from the list.



6. Select other categories if you wish.

 Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

Calling up playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ψ or symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the or symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random playback

The current list of tracks is played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button.

Video playback

At a glance

Video playback via snap-in adapter is possible. Operation can be performed via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Playback

The video image is displayed on the front Control Display up to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h; in some countries, it is only displayed if the parking brake is set or if the automatic transmission is in position P.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Video"
5. Select the directory if necessary.

 To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.
6. Select the desired video file to begin playback.

Video menu

Symbol	Function
	Next video file
	Previous video file Double-click on an icon to play back previous video file.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the audio device operating instructions.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g., bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s, the files may not play back correctly in each case.

Information on connection

- The connected audio device is supplied with a max. power of 500 mA if supported by the device. Therefore, do not additionally connect the device to a socket in the vehicle; otherwise, playback may be compromised.
- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB audio interface to recharge external devices.

Bluetooth audio

At a glance

- Music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones can be played back via Bluetooth.

Information Provided by: DEALER

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Use of a mobile phone as an audio source, refer to page 229.

- The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- The volume of the sound output is dependent on the device. If necessary, adjust the volume on the device.
- Up to four external devices can be paired with the vehicle.

Requirements

- The device is suitable. Information under www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.
- The device is ready for operation.
- The ignition is switched on.
- Bluetooth is activated on the vehicle, refer to page 229, and on the device.
- Bluetooth presettings must be made on the device, such as for a connection without confirmation or visibility; refer to the device operating instructions.
- A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits is defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.

Pairing and connecting

Pairing a device

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the device while the vehicle is stationary.◄

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. "Add new phone"

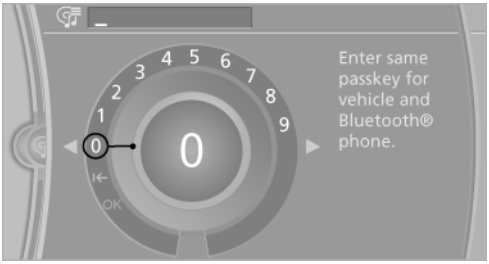
The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



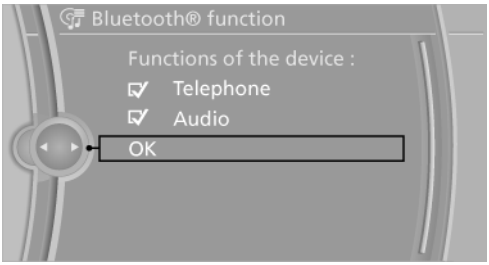
5. Perform additional steps on the device, refer to the device operating instructions: e.g. search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

 The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the device display.
6. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the device display.

 Prompt via iDrive or the device to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.
7. Enter the passkey and confirm.



8. Select the desired functions with which the device is to be connected, e.g. "Audio".
9. "OK"



Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

If pairing was successful, the device is displayed as connected.

White symbol ♫: the device is active as an audio source.

If pairing was unsuccessful: What to do if..., refer to page 216.

Connecting a specific device

A device that has already been paired can be connected as an active audio source.

Connecting is not possible when data is exchanged via a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth.

Requirements

If necessary, activate the audio connection of the desired device from the list of paired devices.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.
5. "Options" Open.
6. "Configure phone"
7. "Audio"
8. "OK"

Connecting the device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.



White symbol ♫: the device is active as an audio source.

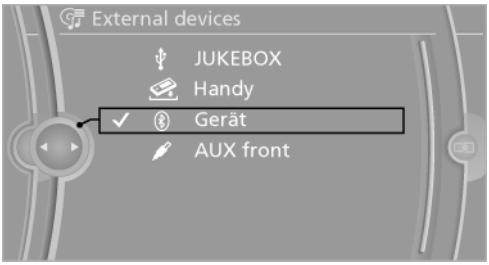
Playback

General information

- The display of music track information depends on the device.
- Operation can takes place on the device or iDrive.
- Playback is interrupted when data is exchanged via a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth.

Starting playback

1. Connect the device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "External devices"
4. Select the symbol.



5. Select the desired track from the list, if necessary.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

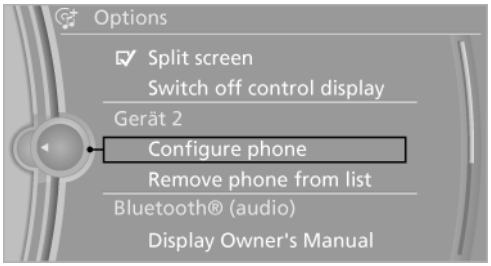
Playback menu

Depending on the particular device, some of the functions may not be available.

Symbol	Function
▷\|	Next track Fast forward: press and hold the symbol.
\|◁	Previous music track Reverse: press and hold the symbol.

Disconnecting the audio connection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. Highlight the desired device.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Configure phone"



6. "Audio"
7. "OK"

Unpairing a device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4. Highlight the device that is to be unpaired.
5. Open "Options".
6. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable devices can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Suitable mobile phones, refer to page 228.

The device is not supported by the vehicle.

▷ Perform a software update, refer to page 217, if needed.

The device could not be paired or connected.

▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the device and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the device and via iDrive.

▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the device or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.

▷ Is the mobile phone in power-save mode or does it have only a limited remaining battery life? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via the charging cable.

▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one device can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and pair and connect only one device.

▷ The device no longer reacts? Switch the device off and on again.

▷ Repeat the pairing procedure.

Music cannot be played back.

▷ Start the program for playing back music data on the device and select a track on the device if necessary.

▷ Switch the radio off and on again.

Music files can only be played back softly.

▷ Adjust the volume settings on the device.

Playback is disturbed when buttons are pressed or by other messages on the device.

▷ Switch off the button tones and other signal tones on the device.

Playback is interrupted by a telephone call or traffic bulletin and is not resumed automatically.

▷ Switch the radio off and on again.

Playback is not possible if the mobile phone is connected both via Bluetooth Audio and via the

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone.

▷ Disconnect one of the two connections; for example, disconnect the audio connection, refer to page 216, and restart playback.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, please contact the hotline or service center.

Software Update

The vehicle supports various external devices depending on the current software version. With a software update, the vehicle can support new cell phones or new external device, for example.

The updating of the software is done via:

▷ USB.

Updates and related current information is available at www.bmw.com/update.

▷ TeleService.

Existing software can be updated directly via the vehicle.

Displaying the current version

The currently installed software is displayed.

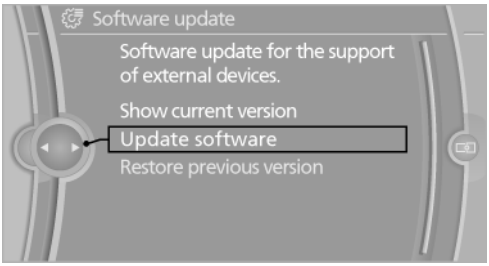
1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Show current version"

SelectDesired version to displayAdditional information.

Updating software via USB

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Store the file for the software-update in the main director of a USB flash drive.
2. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB interface of the USB audio interface in the center armrest. An update via the USB interface in the glove compartment is not possible.
3. "Settings"
4. "Software update"
5. "Update software"



6. "Start update"
7. "OK"

All listed software updates are installed.

Restoring the previous version

If it should become necessary, the software version prior to the last software update can be restored.

The previous version may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Restore previous version"
4. "OK" Double-click.

All listed software updates are removed.

Note

While the software is being updated or a previous version is being restoredBMW Assist, Office functions and the connected devices are temporarily unavailable. Wait several minutes for the functions to become available again.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Communication

All of the options available to you for mobile communication with family, friends, business partners, and service providers are described in this chapter.

Information Provided by DEALER
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Business mobile phone preparation package

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance

The concept

After the mobile phone is paired once with the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated via iDrive, the steering wheel buttons and via voice-activated command.

A paired mobile phone is automatically detected as soon as it is located inside the vehicle, when the ignition is switched on.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired.

Certain functions may need to be enabled by the mobile service provider.

Using the mobile phone while driving

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◄

Approved mobile phones

Details on which mobile phones and external devices with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package can be obtained at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation package. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "Display system information"

These approved mobile phones with a certain software version, support the vehicle functions described below.

Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones or software versions.

Do not operate a mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle on the mobile phone keypad, as this may lead to a malfunction.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge function of the mobile phone can be limited where appropriate and the functions are no longer executed.

When the mobile phone is used via the vehicle, heed the operating manual of the mobile phone.

Pairing/unpairing the mobile phone

General information

The following functions are available:

▷ Use of a mobile phone as a telephone.

Functions supported by the mobile phone are shown as a symbol during pairing.

White symbol: the function is active.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELEVATION

Gray symbol: the function is inactive.

Symbol	Function
	Telephone.

Requirements

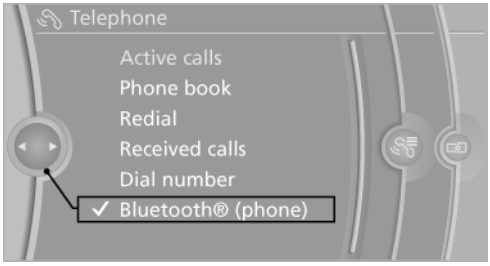
- The mobile phone is suitable.
- The mobile phone is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle, refer to page 222, and on the mobile phone.
- Bluetooth presettings may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.
- A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits was defined as the Bluetooth passkey, depending on the mobile phone. It is only required once for pairing.
- The ignition is switched on.

Pairing and connecting

Pairing the mobile phone

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the mobile phone while the vehicle is stationary.◄

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"



3. "Add new phone"

 The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions: e.g. search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

 The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.
6. You are prompted by the iDrive or mobile phone to enter the same Bluetooth passkey. Enter the passkey and confirm.

 or

 Compare the control number in the display of the vehicle to the control number in the display of the mobile phone. Confirm the control number in the mobile phone and in the vehicle.

 "OK"

7. Select the functions for which the mobile phone is to be used.
8. "OK"

If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

Four mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle at once.

If pairing was unsuccessful: what to do if, refer to page 222.

Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- After they have been identified, phone book entries are transferred from the SIM card and/or mobile phone to the vehicle; this depends on the mobile phone.
- Four mobile phones can be paired.
- Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

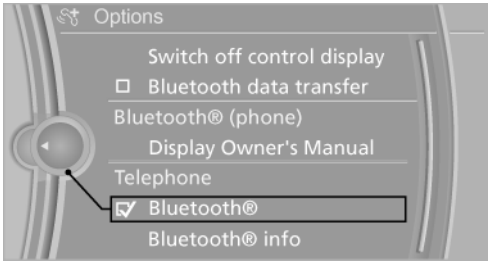
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Bluetooth®"



Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

 All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Select the mobile phone that is to be connected.

Unpairing the mobile phone

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

 All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 220.

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.
- Do the control numbers on the mobile phone and vehicle match? Select correct control number on the mobile phone; repeat pairing, if necessary.
- Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- Periods for confirming the control numbers on the mobile phone longer than 30 seconds? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.
- Is the mobile phone in power-save mode or does it have only a limited remaining battery life? Charge the mobile phone via the charging cable.

The mobile phone no longer reacts.

- Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Ambient temperatures too high or too low? Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Not all phone book entries are displayed.

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- The number of phone book entries being stored is too high.

The phone connection quality is poor.

- The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

▷ Place mobile phone in the vicinity of the center console.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, please contact the hotline or service center.

Controls

Adjusting the volume

Turn the knob until the desired volume is selected. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Incoming call

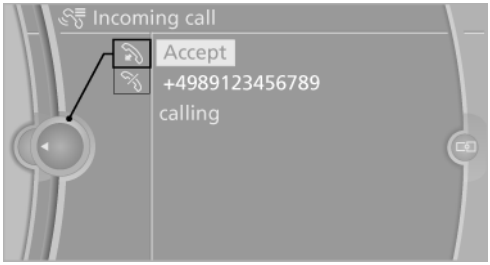
Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed.

Accepting a call

Via iDrive

"Accept"



Via the button on the steering wheel

Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

Via iDrive

"Reject"

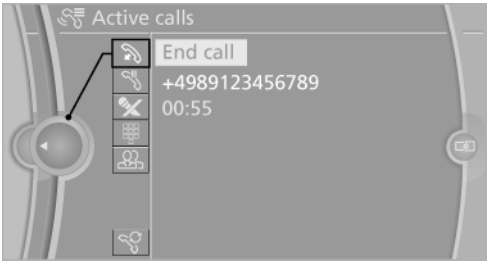
Via the instrument cluster

"Reject"

Ending a call

Via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. Select an active call.
3. "Active calls"



Via the button on the steering wheel

Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"End call"

Entering a phone number

Dialing a number

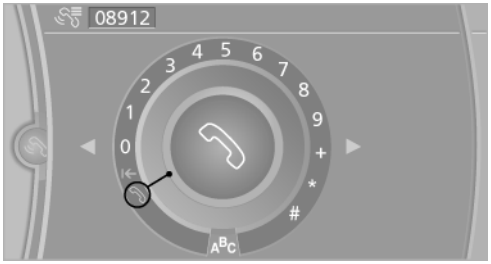
When entering phone numbers, you can switch between entering letters and numbers.

Service numbers can be entered more easily, e. g. 1-888-BMW-CARD.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE

3. Select the digits individually.



4. Convert to letters as required.

 ABC Select the symbol.

 Select the letters individually.

5. Select the symbol.

123 Select symbol to convert to numbers.

Phone numbers can also be entered by voice. Only numbers can be spoken.

Letter/number assignment

Letter	Number
ABC	2
DEF	3
GHI	4
JKL	5
MNO	6
PQRS	7
TUV	8
WXYZ	9

Calls with multiple parties

General information

You can switch between calls or connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function might have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone must be adjusted accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call waiting signal sounds where appropriate.

"Accept"

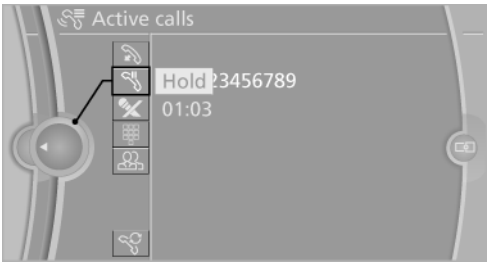
The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish an additional call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

 The existing call is put on hold.



4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, hold call

The active call is displayed in white.

The call on hold is displayed in gray.

"Swap calls"

The call on hold is resumed.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRICING
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Switching the microphone to mute

When a call is active, the microphone can be muted.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Microphone mute"

A microphone that has been switched to mute is automatically reactivated:

- When a new connection is established.
- When switching between call parties.

DTMF suffix dialing

DTMF suffix dialing can be used for gaining access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g., to make a remote inquiry of an answering machine. The DTMF code is needed for this purpose.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select the contact from a list or "Dial number".
3. "Keypad dialing"
4. Enter the DTMF code via iDrive.

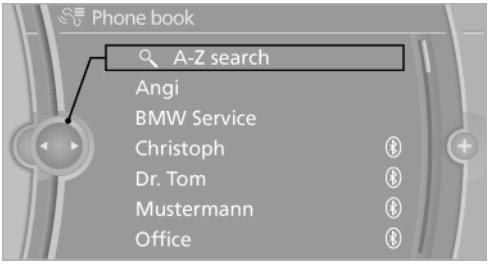
Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.



Calling a contact

Symbol	Meaning
	Contact with one stored phone number.
	Contact with more than one stored phone number.
	Call not possible; mobile phone without reception or network, or Service Request is active.

For contacts with one stored phone number: select the required contact. The connection is established.

For contacts with more than one stored phone number: select the required contact and the phone number. The connection is established.

Editing a contact

Changing the entries in "Contacts". When a contact is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRO.COM

Redialing

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the mobile phone is transmitted to the vehicle depending on the mobile phone. The 20 phone numbers dialed last are displayed. The sorting order of the phone numbers depends on the particular mobile phone.

Dialing the number via the instrument cluster

This is possible when there is no active call.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Dialing a number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"
3. Select the desired entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

The erasure of entries depends on the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Delete entry" or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

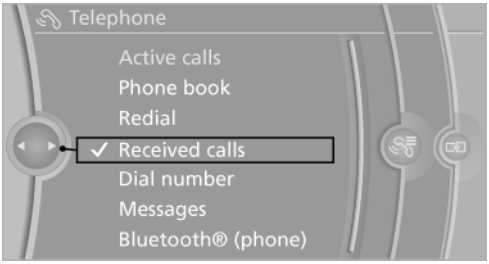
1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the contact, if necessary.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Received calls

Displaying calls

The list of incoming calls on the mobile phone is transmitted to the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. The 20 telephone calls that were last received are displayed. The sorting order and display of the phone numbers depend on the particular mobile phone.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Calling a number from the list

Selecting an entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

The erasure of entries depends on the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Delete entry" or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the contact, if necessary.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Hands-free system

General information

Calls that are being made on the hands-free system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Professional mobile phone preparation package

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance

The concept

Mobile phones or other external devices such as audio players can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

After these devices are paired once, they are recognized automatically when the ignition is switched on as soon as they are inside the vehicle and can be operated via iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel, and via voice activation.

Depending on their functionality, external devices can be used via the vehicle as a telephone or as an audio source.

The telephone functions are described in the following. Operation of the audio functions, refer to page 213.

Up to four external devices can be paired.

Certain functions may need to be enabled by the mobile phone provider or service provider.

Using the mobile phone while driving

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◄

Snap-in adapter

The snap-in adapter is used to:

- Hold the mobile phone.
- Recharge the battery.
- Connect the mobile phone to an outside antenna of the vehicle.

 This provides for better network reception and consistent sound quality.

Approved mobile phones

Details on which mobile phones and external devices with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package can be obtained at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation package. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "Display system information"

These approved mobile phones with a certain software version, support the vehicle functions described below.

Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones or software versions.

Do not operate a mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle on the mobile phone keypad, as this may lead to a malfunction.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge function of the mobile phone can be limited where appropriate and the functions are no longer executed.

When the mobile phone is used via the vehicle, heed the operating manual of the mobile phone.

Pairing/unpairing the mobile phone

General information

The following functions are available:

- Use of a mobile phone as a telephone.
- Use of a mobile phone as an additional telephone.
- Use of a mobile phone as an audio source.
- Use of an audio device as an audio source, refer to page 214.

Requirements

- The mobile phone is suitable.
- The mobile phone is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- Bluetooth presettings may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.
- Deactivate Bluetooth audio if necessary.
- A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits was defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.
- The ignition is switched on.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Bluetooth®"

Additional functions

Activating/deactivating the additional functions

Activate the functions before pairing to be able to use them in the vehicle. Information on suitable mobile phones that support this function, refer to page 228.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Configure Bluetooth®"
5. Select the desired additional function.
 - "Additional telephone"
 - "Office"
 - "Bluetooth® audio"
6. "OK"

As long as an additional function is deactivated, it cannot be assigned to a telephone.

Additional telephone

A mobile phone can be used as an additional telephone.

The additional telephone can be used to accept incoming calls, refer to page 232. While a call is active on the additional telephone, incoming calls are displayed on the Control Display.

Audio source

A mobile phone can be used as an audio source.

Pairing and connecting cell phone

Pairing the mobile phone

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the mobile phone while the vehicle is stationary.◂

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. "Add new phone"

 The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

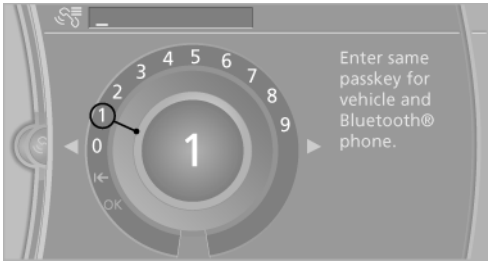
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions: e.g. search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

 The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

 Prompt via iDrive or the mobile phone to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.

6. Enter the passkey and confirm.



7. Select the functions for which the mobile phone is to be used.
8. "OK"

If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

The functions supported by the mobile phone and audio device are displayed as symbols when paired.

White symbol: the function is active.

Gray symbol: the function is inactive.

Symbol	Function
	Telephone.
	Additional telephone.
	Audio source.

Four mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle at once. Three mobile phones can be connected with the vehicle at once.

If pairing was unsuccessful: What to do if..., refer to page 231.

Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- The phone book entries of the telephone stored on the SIM card or mobile phone are transmitted to the vehicle after detection, depending on the mobile phone.
- Four mobile phones can be paired.
- Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. If a different detected cell phone is connected with the vehicle. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Select the mobile phone that is to be connected.

The functions assigned to the mobile phone before unpairing are assigned to the mobile phone when it is reconnected. If the mobile phone is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

Configuring cell phone

Additional functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected mobile phones.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. Highlight the mobile phone to be configured.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Configure phone"
6. At least one function must be selected.
 - ▷ "Telephone"
 - ▷ "Additional telephone"
 - ▷ "Audio"
7. "OK"

If a function is assigned to a mobile phone, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a mobile phone that is already connected and the mobile phone will be unpaired.

Swapping the telephone and additional telephone

The function of the telephone and additional telephone can be swapped automatically.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Swap phone/addit. phone"

Unpairing the mobile phone

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 228.

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.
- ▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.
- ▷ Is the audio connection activated? Deactivate the audio connection.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone in power-save mode or does it have only a limited remaining battery life? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via the charging cable.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one cell phone can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected cell phone from the vehicle and pair and connect only one cell phone.

The mobile phone no longer reacts.

- ▷ Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▷ Ambient temperatures too high or too low? Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

The telephone functions are not available.

- ▷ Is the mobile phone paired as an additional telephone and is the additional telephone function deactivated? Activate the function.
- ▷ Is an outgoing call not possible? Connect the mobile phone as a telephone.

No or not all phone book entries are displayed, or they are incomplete.

- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries being stored is too high.
- ▷ Is the data volume of the contact too large, e.g., due to stored information such as

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

notes? Reduce the data volume of the contact.

- Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source or additional telephone? The mobile phone must be connected as a telephone.

The phone connection quality is poor.

- The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter or place it in the area of the center console.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline or service center.

Controls

Adjusting the volume

Turn the knob until the desired volume is selected. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The vehicle automatically adjusts the volume of the microphone on the telephone and the volume of the called party. Depending on the mobile phone, the volumes may need to be adjusted. The settings can only be created during a call and must be adjusted separately for each telephone. The settings are deleted when the telephone is unpaired.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeak."
5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed. Otherwise, only the phone number is displayed.

If more than one phone number is assigned to a contact, only the name of the contact is displayed.

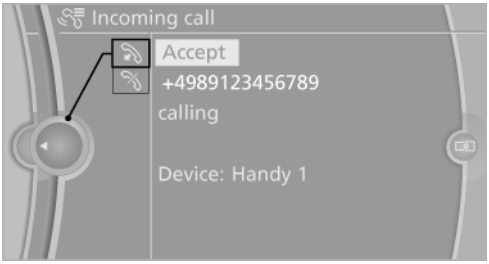
For calls on the additional telephone, the number is only displayed if it is transmitted by the network.

An incoming call to the additional telephone is automatically rejected if there is an active call on the other telephone.

Accepting a call

Via iDrive

"Accept"



Via the button on the steering wheel



Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

Via iDrive

"Reject"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

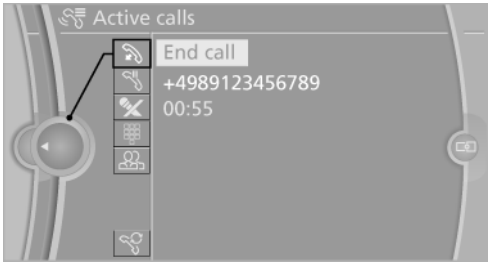
Via the instrument cluster

"Reject"

Ending a call

Via iDrive

"End call"



Via the button on the steering wheel



Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"End call"

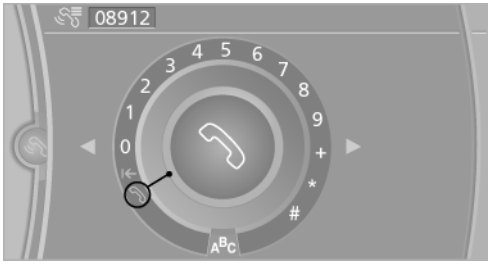
Entering a phone number

Dialing a number

When entering phone numbers, you can switch between entering letters and numbers.

Service numbers can be entered more easily, e. g. 1-888-BMW-CARD.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.



4. Convert to letters as required.

 ABC Select the symbol.

 Select the letters individually.
5. Select the symbol.

123 Select symbol to convert to numbers.

Phone numbers can also be entered by voice. Only numbers can be spoken.

Letter/number assignment

Letter	Number
ABC	2
DEF	3
GHI	4
JKL	5
MNO	6
PQRS	7
TUV	8
WXYZ	9

Calls with multiple parties

General information

You can switch between calls or connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRODOS

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function might have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone must be adjusted accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call waiting signal sounds where appropriate.

"Accept"

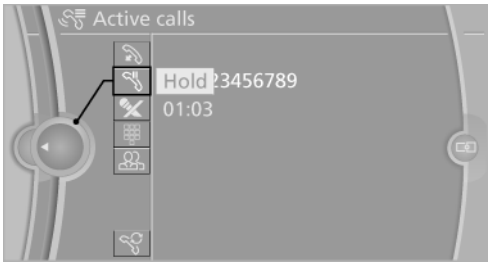
The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish an additional call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

 The existing call is put on hold.



4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, hold call

The active call is displayed in color.

The call on hold is displayed in gray.

"Swap calls"

The call on hold is resumed.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Switching the microphone to mute

When a call is active, the microphone can be muted.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Microphone mute"

A microphone that has been switched to mute is automatically reactivated:

- When a new connection is established.
- When switching between call parties.

DTMF suffix dialing

DTMF suffix dialing can be used for gaining access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g., to make a remote inquiry of an answering machine. The DTMF code is needed for this purpose.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select the contact from a list or "Dial number".
3. "Keypad dialing"
4. Enter the DTMF code via iDrive.

Phone book

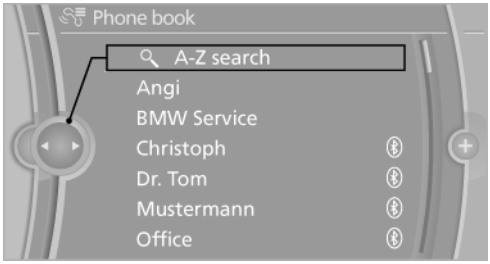
Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Calling a contact

Symbol	Meaning
	Contact with one stored phone number.
	Contact with more than one stored phone number.
	Call not possible; mobile phone without reception or network, or Service Request is active.

For contacts with one stored phone number: select the required contact. The connection is established.

For contacts with more than one stored phone number: select the required contact and the phone number. The connection is established.

Editing a contact

Changing the entries in "Contacts". When a contact is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialing

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the mobile phone is transmitted to the vehicle depending on the mobile phone. The 20 phone numbers dialed last are displayed. The sorting order of the phone numbers depends on the particular mobile phone.

Dialing the number via the instrument cluster

This is possible when there is no active call.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Dialing a number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"
3. Select the desired entry and the phone number if necessary.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

The erasure of entries depends on the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Delete entry" or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the contact, if necessary.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

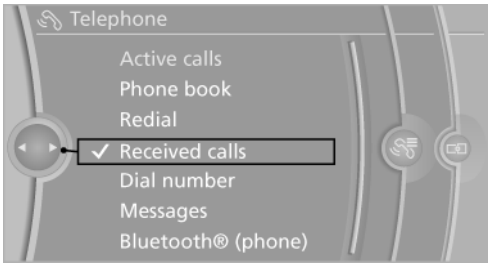
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Received calls

Displaying calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Calling a number from the list

Selecting an entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

The erasure of entries depends on the mobile phone.

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Delete entry" or"Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the contact, if necessary.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. "Store contact"

Hands-free system

General information

Calls that are being made on the hands-free system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Snap-in adapter

General information

Detailed information about snap-in adapter, which supports the functions of the mobile phone, available from the service center.

Notes

At high temperatures, the charge function of the mobile phone can be limited where appropriate and the functions are no longer executed.

When the mobile phone is used via the vehicle, heed the operating manual of the mobile phone.

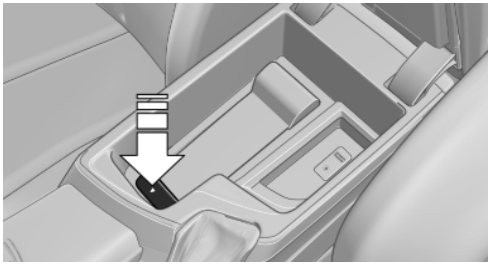
Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Installation position

In the center armrest.

Inserting the snap-in adapter

1. Press the button and remove the cover.

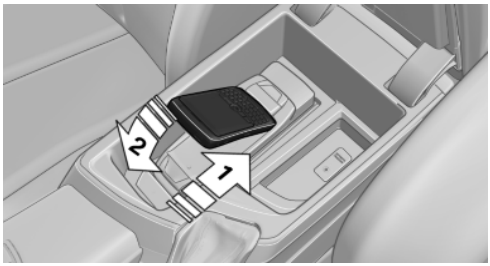


2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow 1, and press down, arrow 2, until it engages.

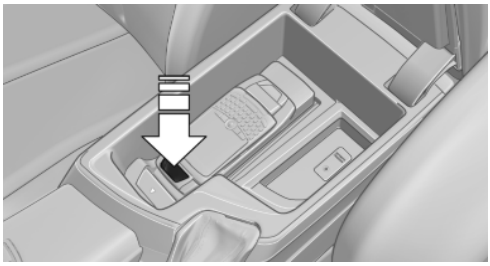


Inserting the mobile phone

1. Depending on the mobile phone, remove the protective cap from the antenna connector and from the USB connection of the mobile phone.
2. Slide the mobile phone with the buttons facing up in the direction of the electrical connections, arrow 1, and push downward, arrow 2 until it engages.



Removing the mobile phone



Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Office

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

At a glance

General information

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, and e-mails from the mobile phone can be displayed on the Control Display if the mobile phone provides compatible support of these functions and the necessary Bluetooth standards.

Information about which mobile phones support Office functions can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth. A limited number of compatible mobile phones is available for Office.

Contents are only displayed in full length when the vehicle is stationary.

The mobile phone has read-access only.

Do not use Office while driving

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.◀

Requirements

- A suitable mobile phone is paired with the vehicle and connected. In some mobile phones, data access must be confirmed on the mobile phone.
- The time, time zone, and date, refer to page 83, are correctly set on the Control Display and on the mobile phone to correctly display appointments, for example.
- Office is activated, refer to page 229.

Updating

Data are updated every time the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. Appointment entries, tasks, notes and reminders can be updated separately.

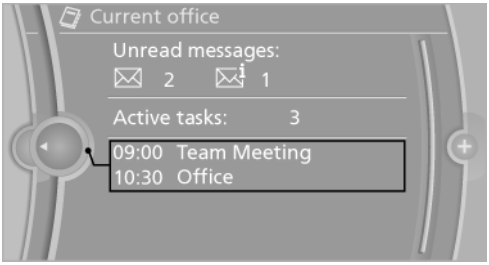
1. "Office"
2. "Current office", "Calendar", "Tasks", "Notes" or "Reminders"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Update data"

 Cell phone data are transmitted again to the vehicle.

Office information

The number of unread messages and active tasks as well as the upcoming appointments are displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Current office"
3. Select the desired entry to display details.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Contacts

Note

If equipped with Professional mobile phone preparation package.

At a glance

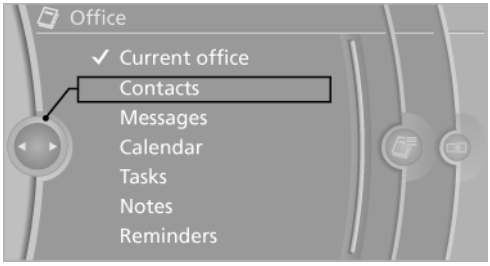
Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The phone numbers can be selected.

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. Addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

Displaying contacts

General information

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"



All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered, refer to page 22.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone.

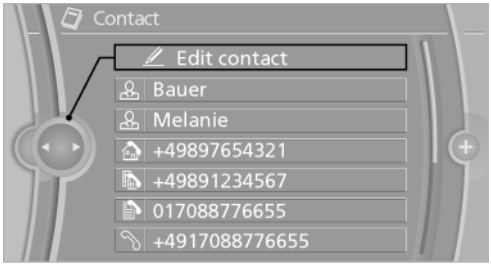
Dialing phone numbers

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the phone number.

 The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"



3. Change the entries.
4. "Store contact in vehicle"

When a contact is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

Selecting the contact as a navigation destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the address.

 When contacts from the mobile phone are used, the address may need to be matched to the navigation data contained in the vehicle. In this case:

 Correct the address.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address if necessary.

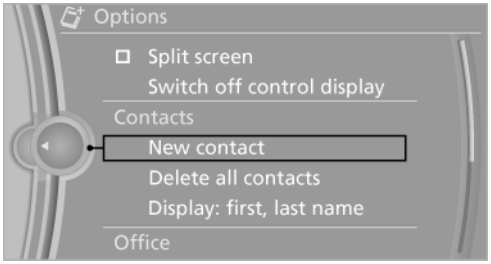
If the address is corrected and stored, a copy of it is stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

New contact

General information

A contact can have up to 8 phone numbers, 2 addresses, 3 e-mail addresses and one Internet address.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "New contact"



5. The entry fields are still filled with the previous entries: "Delete input fields"
6. Fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.
7. Enter the text and assign the contact type.
8. In the navigation system: enter address. Only addresses contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.

 If necessary, "Accept address".
9. "Store contact in vehicle"

Contact types

Various contact types can be assigned to phone numbers and addresses.

Symbol	Meaning
	Home phone number.
	Business phone number.
	Mobile phone number.
	Other phone number.
	Home address.
	Business address.

Specifying the home address

A home address can be stored. It appears at the top of the contact list.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting the sorting order of the names

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored on the mobile phone, the sorting order of the names may differ from the selected sorting order.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Show contact pictures

Pictures stored with the contacts are stored in the vehicle when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. The number of transmitted pictures depends on the mobile phone. The mobile phone must support this function.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Configure Bluetooth®"
5. "Show images"

Display of all contact pictures is activated or deactivated.

Exporting/importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported via the Personal Profile, refer to page 31. The contacts stored in the vehicle are exported, but not those from the mobile phone.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Highlight the contact.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete contact"or "Delete all contacts".
6. If necessary "Yes"

Messages

General information

Whether or not text messages and e-mails from the mobile phone are displayed depends on whether transmission from the mobile phone to the vehicle is supported. Text messages and e-mails may not be supported by the service provider, or the function may need to be enabled separately. After the mobile phone is first paired, transmission may take several minutes. Messages are only displayed in full length when the vehicle is stationary. Messages from the additional telephone are not transmitted.

Displaying messages

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"

A symbol identifies the type of message.

Symbol	Message type
	Text messages.
	My Info
	Message from the Concierge service.
	Message from BMW Info.
	E-mail from mobile phone.

Filtering the message list

The message list can be filtered when more than one type of message exists.

1. "Filter:"



2. Select the type of message.
 - ▷ "All"
 All messages are displayed.
 - ▷ "E-mail"
 Only e-mails from the mobile phone are displayed.
 - ▷ "Service message"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECT

Only messages from the BMW Assist Concierge service, My Info and BMW Info are displayed.

▷ "Text message"

Only text messages from the mobile phone are displayed.

Deleting messages

Messages from the Concierge service, My Info, and BMW Info can be deleted.

Delete a message:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.
4. "Options" Open.
5. "Delete message"

Delete all messages:

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Delete all messages"

Text messages

Calling the sender of a text message

1. Select the desired message.
2. Select the symbol.

Saving the sender in the contacts

1. Highlight the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 245.

Reading the text message out loud

Read the text message out loud, refer to page 245.

My Info

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains a number, the connection is established.
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.

Message from the Concierge service

Storing an address

1. Select the desired message.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting additional functions

Additional functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains a number, the connection is established.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Symbol	Function
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.
	"Further information" Displaying additional information.

BMW Info

General information

Messages from BMW regarding service actions and news from BMW.

Selecting additional functions

The following functions are available when a message is selected:

Symbol	Function
	"Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"
	"Call" If the message contains a number, the connection is established.
	"Select phone number" If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.
	"Further information" Detailed information about a message is displayed. This does not result in any costs.

E-mail

Displaying e-mails

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired e-mail.

Displaying e-mail contacts

If the sender and recipient of an e-mail are transmitted by the mobile phone, this information is displayed in the e-mail.

"Sender/Recipient"

If the e-mail addresses are stored in the contacts, the contact is displayed. Select the contact to display details.

If the e-mail addresses are not stored in the contacts, only the e-mail address is displayed.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 245.

Deactivating the full display

When an e-mail is opened in the vehicle, the e-mail is fully transmitted to the vehicle. This may result in charges.

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Fully download e-mails"

 Only a part of the email from the cell phone is loaded into the vehicle.

Reading the e-mail out loud

Read the e-mail out loud, refer to page 245.

Calendar

Display the calendar

Appointments during the last 20 and the next 50 days can be displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Calendar"

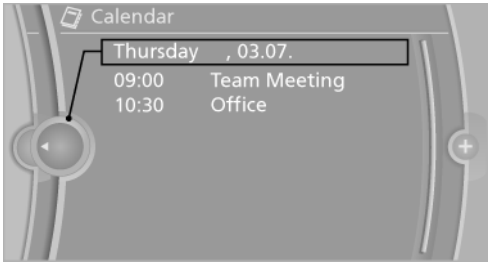
Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

The appointments on the current day are displayed.

Selecting the calendar day

1. Select the date.



2. Select the desired day or date.
 - ▷ "Next day"
 - ▷ "Date:"
 - ▷ "Previous day"
 - ▷ "Today"

Display the appointment

1. Select the desired appointment.
2. Scroll through the appointment if necessary:
 - ▷ Turn the controller.
 - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 245.

Reading the appointment out loud

Read the appointment out loud, refer to page 245.

Tasks

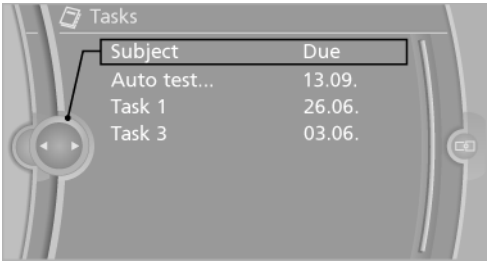
Displaying the task list

Display tasks that are due within the next 90 days.

1. "Office"
2. "Tasks"

Sorting the task list

1. Select the header in the task list.



2. Select the sorting criterion:
 - ▷ "Priority (!)"
 - ▷ "Subject"
 - ▷ "Due date"

Displaying the task

1. Select the desired task.
2. Scroll in the task if necessary:
 - ▷ Turn the controller.
 - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 245.

Reading the task out loud

Read the task out loud, refer to page 245.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Notes

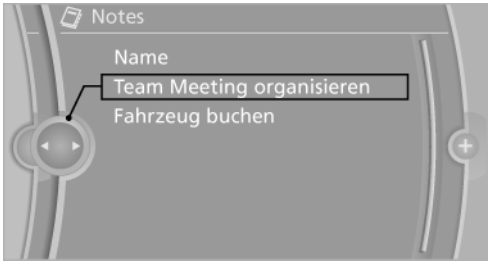
Displaying notes

1. "Office"
2. "Notes"

 All notes are displayed.

Displaying the note

1. Select the desired note.



2. Scroll in the note if necessary:
 - ▷ Turn the controller.
 - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected, refer to page 245.

Reading the note out loud

Read the note out loud, refer to page 245.

Reminders

Displaying reminders

Reminders of pending appointments and tasks are displayed. After an appointment or after a task is due, the reminder is no longer displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Reminders"
3. Select the desired reminder.

The corresponding appointment or the task are displayed.

Using contact data

At a glance

Contact data from appointments, tasks, text messages, emails and notes can be stored or selected.

Displaying contact or selecting phone number

1. "Use contact data"
2. Display the contact or select the phone number:
 - ▷ Select the contact to display contact details.
 - ▷ Select the phone number to establish a connection directly.

Storing contact data

1. "Use contact data"
2. Highlight the phone number or e-mail address.
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Add to existing contact" or "Store as new contact"

Reading out loud

Text messages, e-mails, appointment entries, tasks, and notes can be read out loud.

1. Select the desired message, appointment, task, or note.
2. ▷ Select the symbol.

The following options are available during reading:

- ▷ ❙❙ "Pause"

 Interrupt reading. Select again to restart reading.

Information Provided by: DEALER

- ⏮ "Back to beginning"

 Start reading message again from the beginning.
- ⏭ Select the symbol.

 Skip a paragraph.
- ⏮ Select the symbol.

 Go back one paragraph.
- To end reading, tilt the controller to the left.

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 228.

Appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, or e-mails from the mobile phone are not displayed.

- The mobile phone is not capable of the missing function or is not connected correctly.
- The Office function is deactivated.
- The mobile phone is connected as an additional phone.
- Appointments are older than 20 days or are more than 50 days in the future.
- The tasks have been marked as completed or have a due date that lies more than 90 days in the future.
- Depending on the number of stored appointments, task notes, and messages in the mobile phone, not all are displayed in the vehicle.

Not all appointments and tasks from the mobile phone are displayed at the right time?

- The time zone, time or date is incorrectly set on the Control Display and mobile phone.

The e-mail attachment is not displayed.

- E-mails are transmitted without an attachment.

Entries are not displayed in full length.

- Text were already transmitted from the mobile phone in a shortened form.
- Synchronization between the mobile phone and vehicle may take several minutes.

The contact pictures are not being displayed?

- Up to 200 contact pictures can be stored in the vehicle.

The E-mail is displayed with a delay?

- Check the e-mail settings on the mobile phone and adjust if necessary.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline or service center.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERIENCE
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Contacts

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Note

If equipped with Business mobile phone preparation equipment package or without mobile phone preparation.

General information

Contacts can be created and edited.

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. Addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"



3. The entry fields are still filled with the previous entries: "Delete input fields"
4. Fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.



5. Enter the text, refer to page 22.
6. In the navigation system: enter address. Only addresses contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.
7. If necessary, "Store".
8. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying the home address

A home address can be stored. It appears at the top of the contact list.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

My contacts

General information

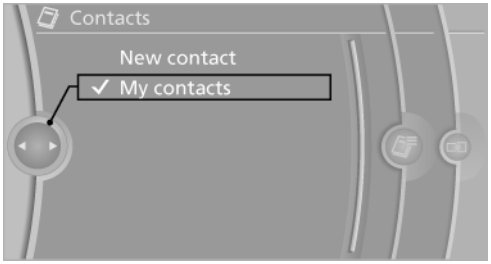
A list of all contacts in the vehicle and mobile phone.

Displaying contacts

1. "Contacts"

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

2. "My contacts"



All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered, refer to page 22.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone.

Dialing a phone number

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the phone number.

 The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"



3. Change the entries.
4. Move the controller to the left.
5. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed. Under certain circumstances, a contact entry with the same name is created.

Selecting the contact as a navigation destination

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select the address.

 When contacts from the mobile phone are used, the address may need to be matched to the navigation data contained in the vehicle. In this case:

 Correct the address.
3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address if necessary.

If the address is corrected and stored, a copy of it is stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

Selecting the sorting order of the names

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "My contacts"
2. "Options" Open.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

3. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored on the mobile phone, the sorting order of the names may differ from the selected sorting order.

Exporting/importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported via the Personal Profile, refer to page 31.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Delete contact"or "Delete all contacts".

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

ConnectedDrive

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

BMW Assist

General information

BMW Assist provides you with certain services, e.g., transmission of the position data of your vehicle to the BMW Assist Response Center if an Emergency Request has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed upon contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without your having to visit a service center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Requirements

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your service center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

- Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.
- Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your service center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report that your vehicle was stolen to the police, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers Concierge service and information for route planning, traffic, and weather. A limited number of calls can

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling if, for example, the mobile phone is not available or discharged.

Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService

General information

TeleService supports communication with your service center.

- Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the service center. In this way, the service center can plan its work in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.
- In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.
- The service varies by country.
- Connection costs may ensue.
- Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- BMW Assist is activated.
- Wireless reception is available.
- The ignition is switched on.

Using TeleService

The TeleServices are typically activated in the vehicle.

Even if TeleService Customer Service is not active, a voice contact to Roadside Assistance is still possible.

To continue using or to deactivate the services, please contact your service partner or the BMW customer hotline.

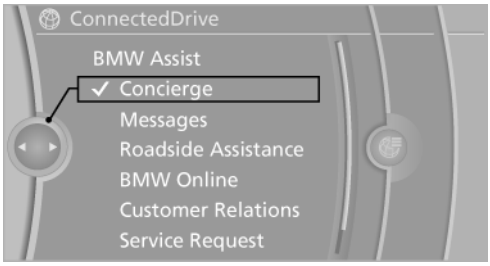
Concierge service

General information

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Assist Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Convenience Plan.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Concierge"



3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established with the BMW Assist Concierge service. Phone numbers and addresses can be transmitted to the vehicle.

Roadside Assistance

At a glance

BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

Roadside Assistance can also be contacted via a Check Control message, refer to page 75.

Start Roadside Assistance without BMW Assist or TeleServices

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

The Roadside Assistance number is displayed. If the mobile phone is paired, a connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

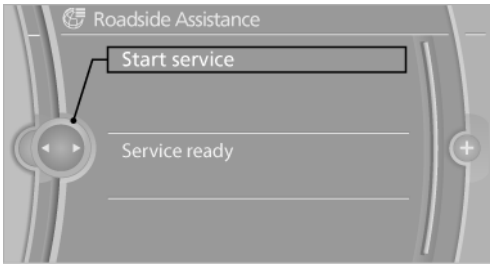


Start Roadside Assistance with BMW Assist or TeleServices

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with TeleServices, support is first offered through TeleService Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through TeleService Help.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Roadside Assistance"
3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. These data are transmitted automatically.

After the data are transmitted, the voice connection to Roadside Assistance is re-established.

BMW Search

At a glance

A business search can be opened via BMW Search.

License conditions

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

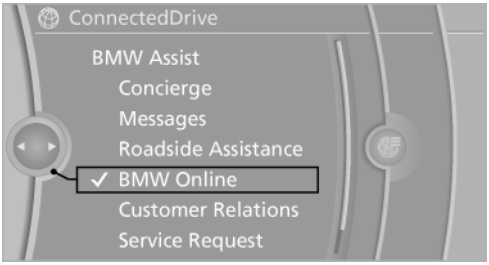
This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

- Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- The date setting, refer to page 84, on the Control Display is current.
- The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Online"



3. If necessary, "OK".

The BMW Search home page is displayed.

Operating BMW Search

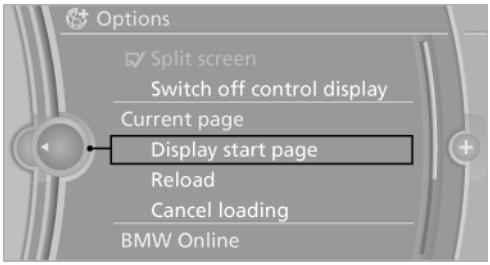
To start a search:

- Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- Press the controller to display an element.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Opening the start page

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Display start page"



Loading a new page

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Update"

Cancel

1. "Options" Open.
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicles not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the mobile phone is paired, a connection is established to Customer Relations.



Vehicles equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

Service Request

At a glance

Sends information to your service partner to request the arrangement of a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your service partner will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"



A Service Request can be started via a Check Control message, refer to page 75.

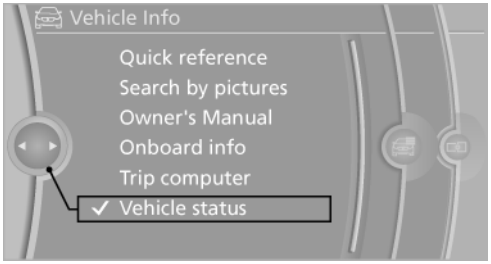
Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECT

Automatic Service Request

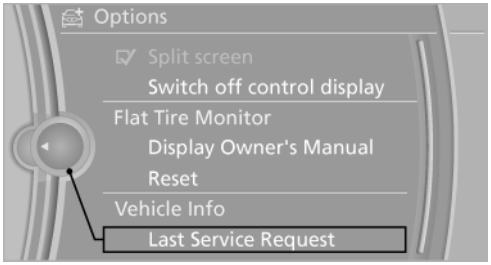
The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your service partner prior to the service deadline. If possible, the service partner will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

To check when your service partner was notified:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"



TeleService Report

Transmits technical data that is evaluated for the ongoing development of BMW products from your vehicle to BMW in regular intervals if necessary.

TeleService Report is activated in vehicles that meet certain technical requirements and have a valid Assist contract; this feature is free of charge.

Neither personal data nor position data is transmitted.

Indicate when the last TeleService Report was transmitted:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Options" Open.
4. "Last Teleservice Info"

TeleService Battery Guard

TeleService Battery Guard continually checks the battery charge level of the vehicle. If the battery charge level falls below a certain value, a notification is automatically sent to your service partner. If necessary, he will contact you to arrange a service appointment.

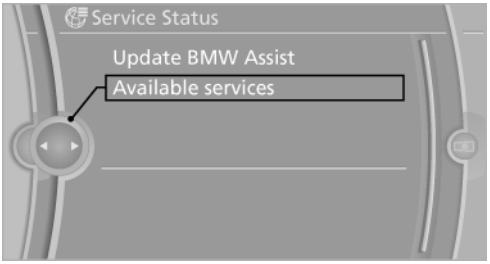
TeleService Battery Guard is only available on vehicles with certain technical requirements and with a valid BMW ConnectedDrive contract.

Services status

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Status"
3. "Available services"



Update BMW Online

Manual update of TeleService and BMW Assist.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

"Update BMW Assist"

Data transfer

During the updating of BMW services, display the status of the data transfer.

1. "BMW Assist" or "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Options" Open.
3. "Data transfer"

Apps

At a glance

Certain software applications of a suitable cell phone can be integrated in the vehicle. These software applications are displayed on the Control Display.

Operation can be performed via iDrive.

Requirements

- The mobile phone is suitable.
- The cell phone operating system supports the software applications of Apps.
- Software applications are installed on the cell phone and ready to use.
- Corresponding mobile wireless contract.

 Any additionally incurred costs are not a part of Apps.
- Use only BMW approved software applications; otherwise, it may result in malfunctions.

Information about suitable cell phones, available software applications and their installation can be found at www.bmw.com/connectivity or at the service center.

Create the entries.

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Otherwise, the vehicle occupants and other road users may be put in danger because of the distraction from driving.

For reasons of safety, some software applications are usable only while the vehicle is stationary.◄

Use apps

1. Connect the cell phone via the snap-in adapter or via the USB audio interface.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. Select the desired software application.

Displaying status

Information about the currently available software applications can be displayed.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW apps"

PlugIn

Selected functions of the cell phone are displayed on the Control Display. Operation can be performed via iDrive.

1. Connect cell phone via the snap-in adapter.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. "PlugIn"
4. "Activate PlugIn"
5. Navigate to the displayed functions via the controller and select, for example, a desired category or track.

BACK Press button to switch within the cell phone functions to a higher level or back.

MENU Press button twice to switch back to the main menu.

Notes

- The ranges of Apps that can be displayed on the Control Display depend on the range of installed software applications on the cell phone.
- The data transmission of the software applications from the cell phone to the vehicle can last some time. Some software applica-

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

tions depend on the speed of the available Internet connection of the cell phone.

▷ Some cell phones cannot simultaneously use Apps and the Bluetooth hands-free system.

If necessary, restart the software application on the cell phone after a phone conversation.

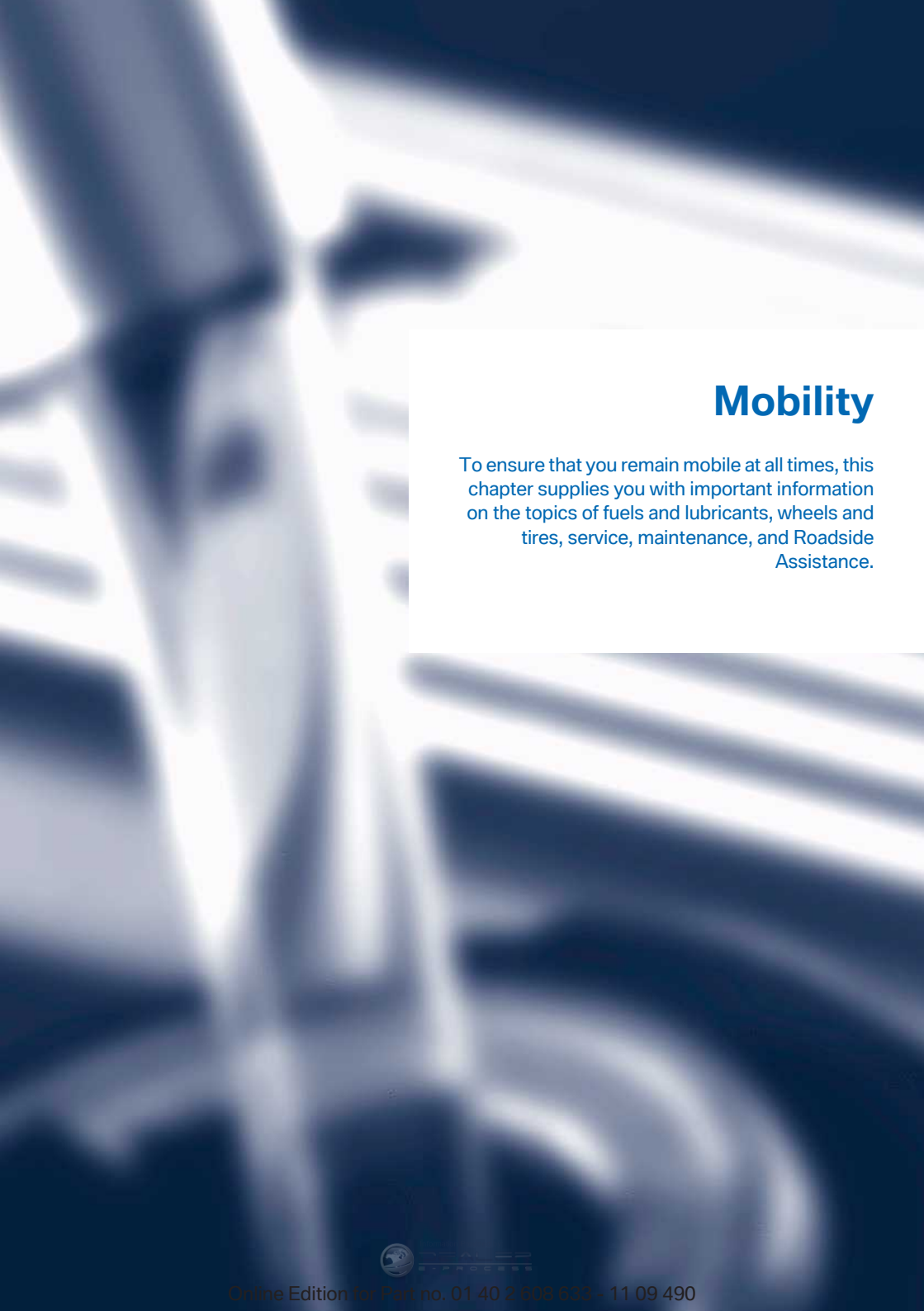
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Mobility

To ensure that you remain mobile at all times, this chapter supplies you with important information on the topics of fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance, and Roadside Assistance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Refueling

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Refuel promptly

Refuel below a range of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur.◂

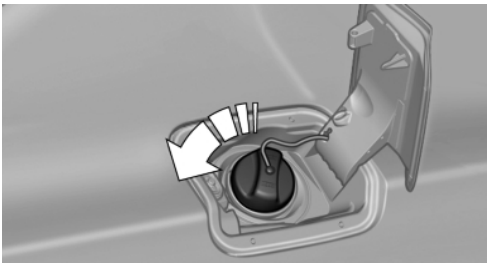
Fuel cap

Opening

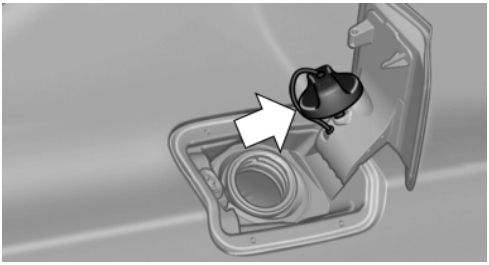
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Do not pinch the retaining strap

Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape.

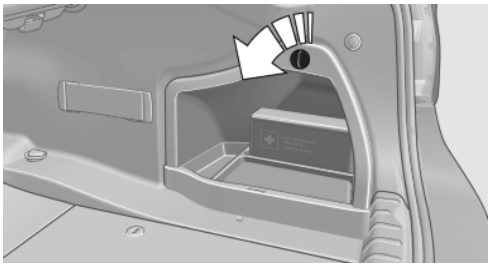
A message is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.◂

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

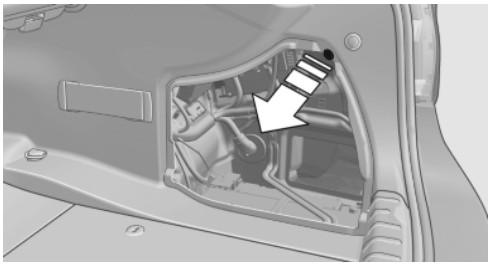
In the event of an electrical malfunction, for example.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

1. Open the cover on the right side trim. To do this, turn the cap.



2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This releases the fuel filler flap.



Observe the following when refueling

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Handling fuels

Obey safety regulations posted at the gas station.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Fuel

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Fuel quality

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Refuel only with unleaded gasoline without metallic additives.

Do not refuel with any leaded gasoline or gasoline with metallic additives, e. g. manganese or iron, or permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components.◀

Do not refuel with ethanol

Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system.◀

Required fuel

Gasoline with lower AKI

The minimum AKI Rating is 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures.

This has no effect on the engine life.

Minimum fuel grade

Do not use any gasoline below the minimum specified fuel grade; otherwise, engine damage may occur.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada.

Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

Minimum fuel grade

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

BMW recommends BP fuels

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wheels and tires

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Tire inflation pressure

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.

Checking the pressure

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When the tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure:

- Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
- Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 264, contains all pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum allowable driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 264, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Maximum permissible speed

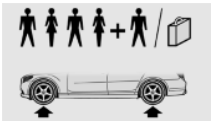
Do not exceed 100 mph/160 km/h; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRESS

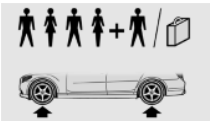
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

320i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 94 V M +S A/S RSC 225/50 R 17 94 V RSC 225/50 R 17 94 H M +S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
225/45 R 18 91 V M +S RSC 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC 225/45 R 18 95 V M +S XL RSC	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
F: 225/50 R 17 94 W RSC R: 255/45 R 17 98 W RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32
F.: 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC R: 255/40 R 18 95 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32
F: 225/40 R 19 89 Y RSC R: 255/35 R 19 92 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.4/ 35
F: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL RSC R: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL RSC	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.8/ 41
Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

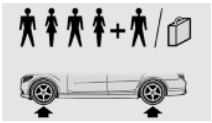
328i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 94 V M +S A/S RSC 225/50 R 17 94 W RSC 225/50 R 17 94 H M +S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
225/45 R 18 91 V M +S A/S RSC 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC 225/45 R 18 95 V M +S XL RSC	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
F: 225/50 R 17 94 W RSC R: 255/45 R 17 98 W RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32
F: 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC R: 255/40 R 18 95 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
F: 225/40 R 19 89 Y RSC R: 255/35 R 19 92 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.4 / 35
F: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL RSC R: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL RSC	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.8 / 41
Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

335i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/45 R 18 91 V M +S A/S RSC 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC 225/45 R 18 95 V M +S XL RSC	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
F: 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC R: 255/40 R 18 95 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.4 / 35
F: 225/40 R 19 89 Y RSC R: 255/35 R 19 92 Y RSC	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.6 / 38

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
F: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL RSC R: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL RSC	2.6 / 38 -	- 3.0 / 44
Compact wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

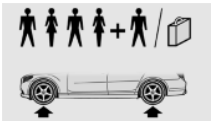
Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◂

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

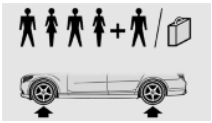
320i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 94 V M +S A/S RSC 225/50 R 17 94 V RSC 225/50 R 17 94 H M +S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.7 / 39

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
225/45 R 18 91 V M +S RSC 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC 225/45 R 18 95 V M +S XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
F: 225/50 R 17 94 W RSC R: 255/45 R 17 98 W RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32
F: 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC R: 255/40 R 18 95 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.2 / 32
F: 225/40 R 19 89 Y RSC R: 255/35 R 19 92 Y RSC	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.5 / 36
F: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL RSC R: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL RSC	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.9 / 42
Compact wheel T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

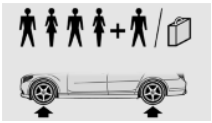
328i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 17 94 V M +S A/S RSC 225/50 R 17 94 W RSC 225/50 R 17 94 H M +S RSC	2.3 / 33	2.8 / 41
225/45 R 18 91 V M +S RSC 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC 225/45 R 18 95 V M +S XL RSC	2.5 / 36	3.0 / 44
F: 225/50 R 17 94 W RSC R: 255/45 R 17 98 W RSC	2.3 / 33 -	- 2.5 / 36
F: 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC R: 255/40 R 18 95 Y RSC	2.3 / 33 -	- 2.5 / 36
F: 225/40 R 19 89 Y RSC R: 255/35 R 19 92 Y RSC	2.5 / 36 -	- 2.7 / 39
F: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL RSC R: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL RSC	2.7 / 39 -	- 3.2 / 46
Compact wheel T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

335i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/45 R 18 91 V M +S RSC 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC 225/45 R 18 95 V M +S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	3.2 / 46
F: 225/45 R 18 91 Y RSC R: 255/40 R 18 95 Y RSC	2.6 / 38 -	- 2.8 / 41
F: 225/40 R 19 89 Y RSC R: 255/35 R 19 92 Y RSC	2.6 / 38 -	- 3.0 / 44
F: 225/35 R 20 90 Y XL RSC R: 255/30 R 20 92 Y XL RSC	2.8 / 41 -	- 3.4 / 49
Compact wheel T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

255/50 R 19 103 Y

255: nominal width in mm

50: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

19: rim diameter in inches

103: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3510

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3510: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT ... 3510: the tire was manufactured in the 35th week in 2010.

Recommendation

Regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.◄

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 271, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

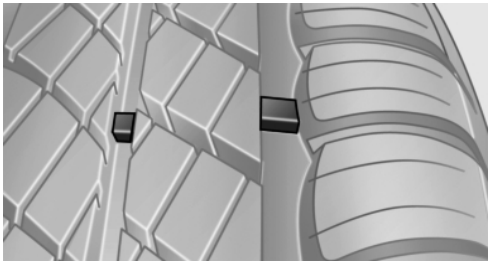
Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Notes

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

- Unusual vibrations during driving.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e. g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

In case of tire damage

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the next service center or tire shop.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.

Otherwise, tire damage can be life-threatening for vehicle occupants and other traffic participants.◀

Repair of tire damage

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result.◀

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting

Information on mounting tires

Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center or tire specialist.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Wheel and tire combination

Information on the correct wheel-tire combination and rim versions for your vehicle can be obtained from your service center.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Approved wheels and tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved for your particular vehicle model.

For example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted.◄

Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

New tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/ 300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Retreaded tires

Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety.◄

Winter tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F/+7 °C.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires do provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then display a corresponding sign in the field of vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.

Maximum speed for winter tires

Do not exceed the maximum speed for the winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur.◄

Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles.

This can impair the handling characteristics.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Run-flat tires

Label



RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of special rims and tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a pressure loss.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 99.

Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Snow chains

Fine-link snow chains

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle, classified as road-safe and recommended.

Consult your service center for more information.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- 205/60 R 16.
- 225/55 R 16.
- 225/50 R 17.
- 225/45 R 18.

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if necessary.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

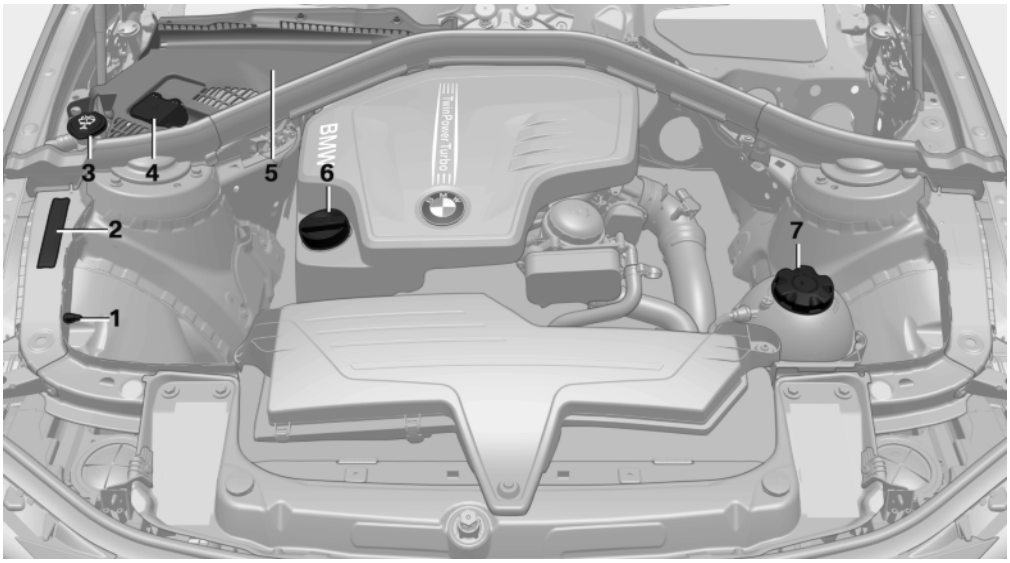
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Important features in the engine compartment



1 Jump-starting, negative terminal

2 Vehicle identification number

3 Washer fluid reservoir

4 Jump-starting, positive terminal

5 Engine compartment fuse box

6 Oil filler neck

7 Coolant reservoir

The coolant reservoir for 6-cylinder and diesel engines is located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Hood

Notes

Working in the engine compartment

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◄

Never reach into the engine compartment

Never reach into the intermediate spaces or gaps in the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is risk of injury, e.g. from rotating or hot parts.◄

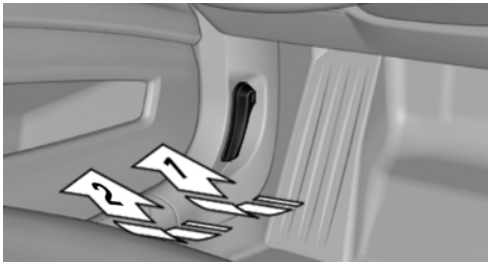
Fold down wiper arm

Before opening the hood, ensure that the wiper arms are against the windshield, or this may result in damage.◄

Opening the hood

1. Pull lever in the interior:

 Engine is released, arrow 1.



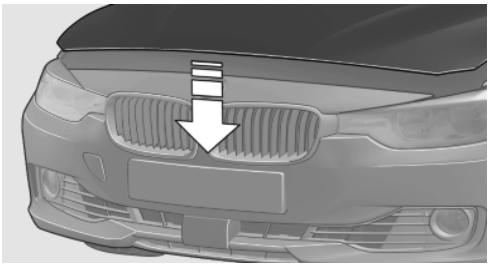
2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again:

 Hood can be opened, arrow 2.

Indicator/warning lamps

When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood



Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely.◄

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Engine oil

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

Check oil level

The concept

The oil level is monitored electronically during driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Displaying the oil level

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

- "Engine oil level OK"
- "Engine oil at minimum. Add 1 quart of engine oil!"

 Within the next 125 miles/200 km, a maximum of 1 US quart/liter oil.
- "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"

 Immediately add 1 US quart/liter of oil.

Detailed measurement

Requirements:

- Vehicle is on a level road and the engine is running at operating temperature.
- Manual transmission: Shift lever in neutral position clutch and gas pedal not depressed.
- Automatic transmission: Selector lever in transmission position N or P and gas pedal not depressed.

In order to perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

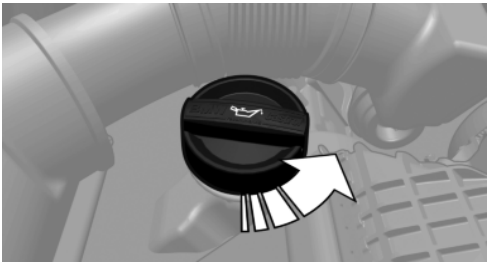
The oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

During the detailed measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Duration: approx. 1 minute.

Adding engine oil

Filler neck



When the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster, add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Do not add too much engine oil

When too much engine oil is added, immediately have the vehicle checked, otherwise, this may cause engine damage.◀

Protect children

Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and heed the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil types for refilling

Notes

No oil additives

Oil additives may lead to engine damage.◀

Viscosity grades for engine oils

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to one of the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, and SAE 5W-30 or malfunctions or engine damage may occur.◀

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Some types of oils in some cases are not available in all countries.

Approved oil types

Specification
BMW High Performance SAE 5W-30
BMW Longlife-01
BMW Longlife-01 FE

Additional information about the approved types of oils can be requested from the service center.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an oil with the following specification can be added:

Specification
API SM or superior grade specification

Oil change

An oil change should be carried out by your service center only.

BMW recommends Castrol

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Coolant

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Danger of burns from hot engine

Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns.◂

Suitable additives

Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health.◂

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your vehicle. Ask your service center for suitable additives.

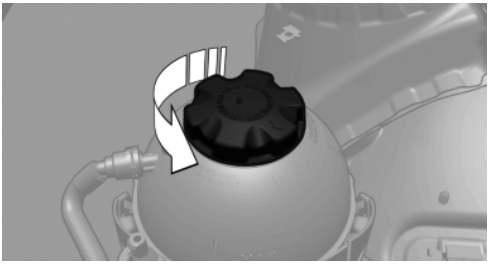
Coolant level

Checking

1. Let the engine cool.
2. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks. The marks are on the side of the coolant reservoir.

Adding engine oil

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the cap of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, and then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system directs you to required maintenance measures and thereby supports you in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance you need to your user profile.

Detailed information on service requirements, refer to page 77, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control that you used most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service history

Perform maintenance work at the service center and have them recorded in the vehicle data. The entries are like a service booklet of the documentation of regular maintenance.

Displaying entered maintenance work on the Control Display, refer to page 78.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

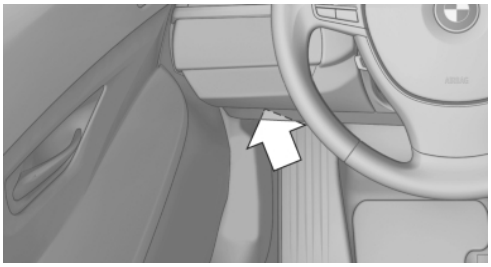
Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.

Information Provided by: DEALER EPROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle emissions.

Emissions





- The warning lamp lights up:

 Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 Canadian model: warning light indicates the engine symbol.

- The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

 This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

 Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Fuel cap



The indicator lamp lights up.

If the fuel cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapor is escaping. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out in a short time.

Data memory

Your vehicle records data relating to vehicle operation, faults and user settings. These data are stored in the remote control and can be read out with suitable devices, particularly when the vehicle is serviced. The data obtained in this way provide valuable information for service processes and repair or for optimizing and developing vehicle functions further.

In addition, if you signed a service contract for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be sent directly from the vehicle to facilitate the desired services.

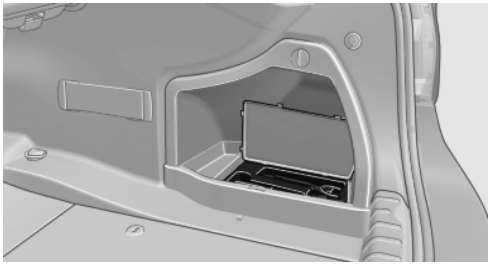
Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Replacing components

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located on the right side in the cargo area in a storage compartment. Open the cover.

Wiper blade replacement

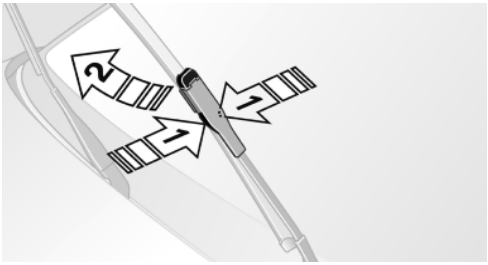
General information

Do not fold down the wipers without wiper blades

Do not fold down the wipers if wiper blades have not been installed; this may damage the windshield.◄

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 66, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Squeeze the retainer spring, arrow 1, and fold up the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Remove the wiper blade forward from the catch.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in reverse order of removal until it locks in place.

Risk of damage

Before opening the hood, ensure that the wiper arms with the wiper blades are against the windshield to prevent damage.◄

Lamp and bulb replacement

General information

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to the service center if you are unfamiliar with them or they are not described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at the service center.

Danger of burns

Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Working on the lighting system

When working on the lighting system, you should always switch off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◄

Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.◄

Do not touch the bulbs

Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◄

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover serve as the light source for controls, display elements and other equipment.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result.◄

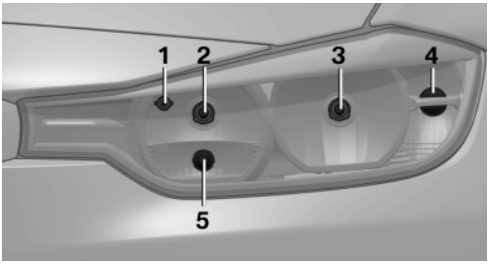
Headlamp glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lamps in cool or humid weather. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlamp glasses do not need to be changed.

If the headlamps do not dim despite driving with the light switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the light, have the service center check this.

Front lamps, bulb replacement

Halogen headlamps

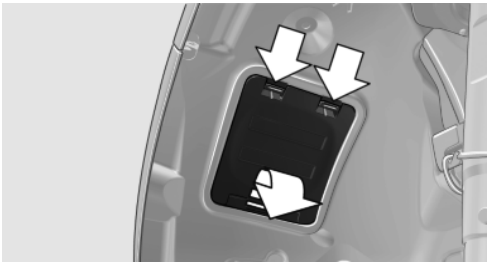


1 Parking lamps
2 High beams/headlamp flasher
3 Low beams
4 Turn signal
5 Daytime running lights

Accessing the turn signals and low beams

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

1. In the wheel house, loosen the two brackets and remove the cover.

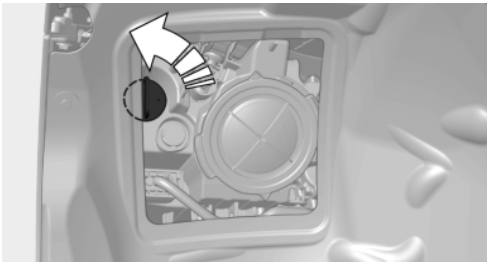


Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Turn signal

21-watt bulb, PY21W

1. If necessary, pull the inside trim of the wheel house slightly inward. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.

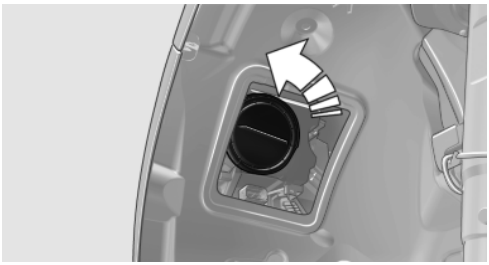


2. Press the bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
3. Install the new bulb and bulb holder in reverse order of removal.
4. Attach the cover to the wheel house.

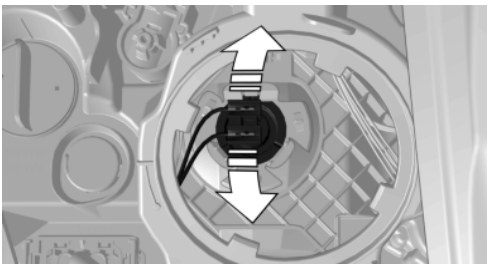
Low beams

55-watt bulb, H7

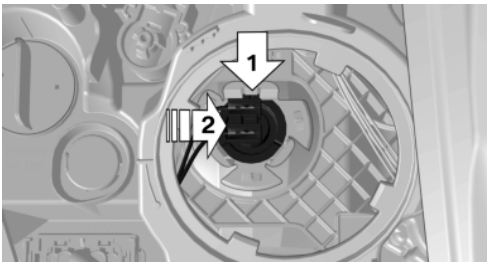
1. Turn the cap counterclockwise and remove.



2. Tilt the bulb down and then up to loosen it from the holder and remove.



3. Pull the connector off the bulb.
4. Attach the connector to the new bulb.
5. First insert the bulb at the top with the strap, arrow 1, and then press down firmly, arrow 2. Make sure that the bulb snaps into place.



6. Close the headlamp housing with the cap. Make sure that the cap engages.
7. Attach the cover to the wheel house.

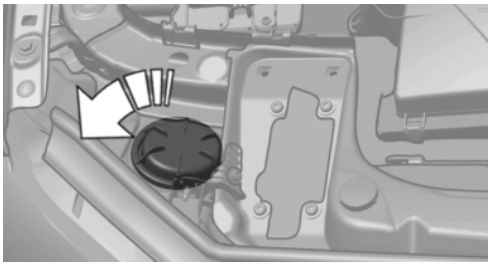
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Accessing the daytime running lights, high beams/headlamp flasher and parking lamps

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

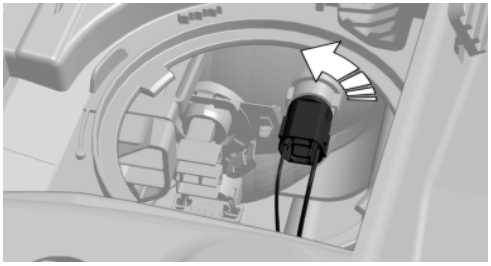
1. Open the hood, refer to page 273.
2. Turn the cap counterclockwise and remove.



Parking lamps

6-watt bulb, H6W

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.

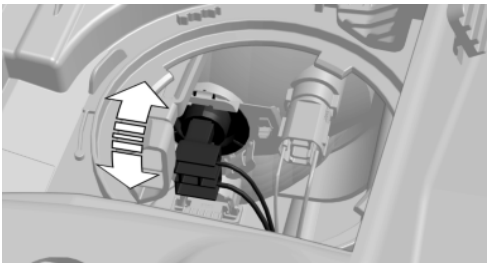


2. Press the bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
3. To insert the bulb and bulb holder, proceed in reverse order of removal. Make sure that the bulb holder snaps into place.
4. Close the headlamp housing with the cap. Make sure that the cap engages.

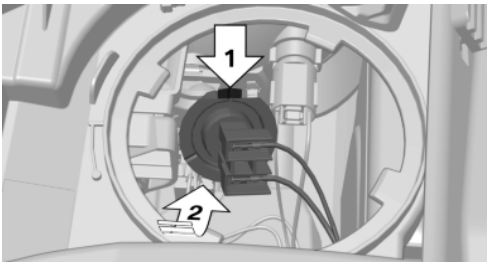
High beams/headlamp flasher

55-watt bulb, H7

1. Tilt the bulb down and then up to loosen it from the holder and remove.



2. Pull the connector off the bulb.
3. Attach the connector to the new bulb.
4. First insert the bulb at the top with the strap, arrow 1, and then press down firmly, arrow 2. Make sure that the bulb snaps into place.



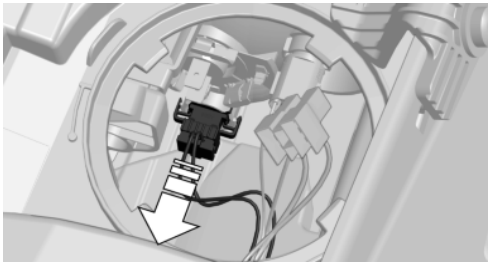
5. Close the headlamp housing with the cap. Make sure that the cap engages.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Daytime running lights

24-watt bulb, PW24W

1. If necessary, remove the high beam bulb connector.
2. Remove the bulb holder.



3. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder.
4. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal. During insertion, the bottom of the bulb holder must be facing downward. Make sure that the bulb holder snaps into place.
5. Attach the high beam bulb connector.
6. Close the headlamp housing with the cap. Make sure that the cap engages.

Xenon headlamps

Xenon headlamps

Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lamps on and off frequently shortens their life.

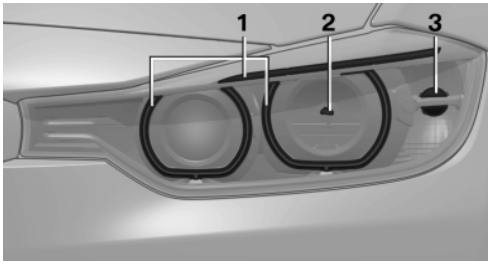
If a xenon bulb fails, switch on the front fog lamps and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.◀

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.

Headlamps



1 Parking lamps/daytime running lights

2 Low beams/high beams/headlamp flasher

3 Turn signal

Low beams and high beams are designed with xenon technology.

The parking lamps and daylight running lights are made using LED technology.

Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

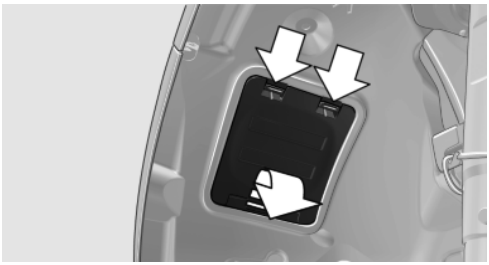
Turn signal

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

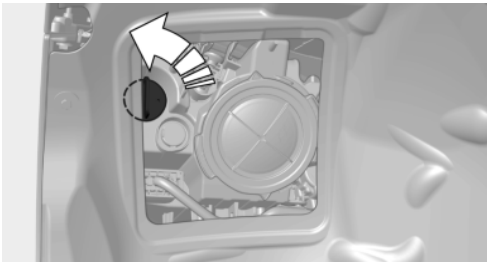
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

21-watt bulb, PY21W

1. In the wheel house, loosen the two brackets and remove the cover.



2. If necessary, pull the inside trim of the wheel house slightly inward. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.



3. Press the bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
4. Install the new bulb and bulb holder in reverse order of removal.
5. Attach the cover to the wheel house.

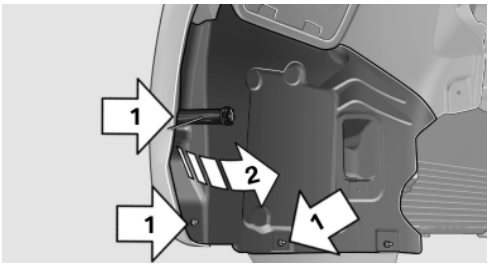
Front fog lamps

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

35-watt bulb, H8

1. Use the back side of the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit to remove the three wheel house panel screws, arrow 1.

Carefully raise the wheel house panel, arrow 2.



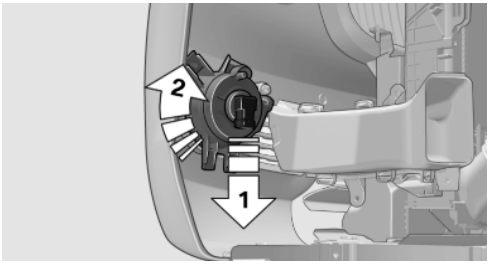
2. Pull off the bulb connector, arrow 1.

 Turn the bulb, arrow 2.

 Left side of vehicle: turn clockwise.

 Right side of vehicle: turn counterclockwise.

 Remove the bulb.



3. Insert the new bulb, connect the connector and screw on the wheel house panel.

Turn signal in exterior mirror

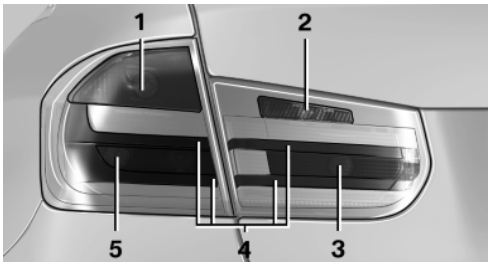
Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

The turn signals feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Tail lamps, bulb replacement

At a glance



1 Turn signal
2 Reversing lamp
3 Inside brake lamp
4 Tail lamps
5 Outside brake lamp

Bulb replacement, exterior tail lamps

General information

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

Turn signal: 21-watt bulb, P21W

Exterior brake lamp: 21-watt bulb, P21W

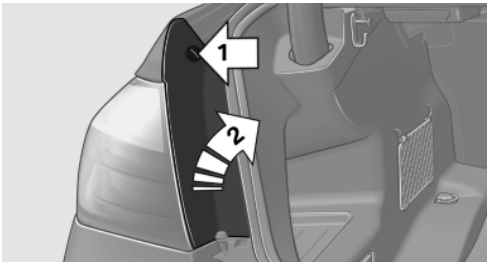
The tail lamps feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Use caution when replacing the bulb

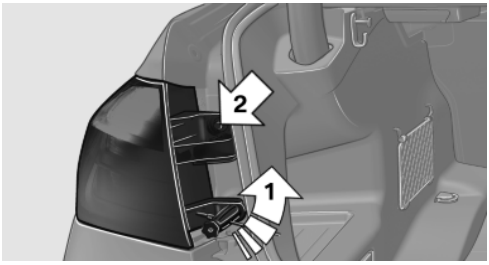
Use caution and proceed one step at a time when replacing the bulbs to prevent damage to the tail lamps or vehicle.◄

Removing the exterior tail lamp

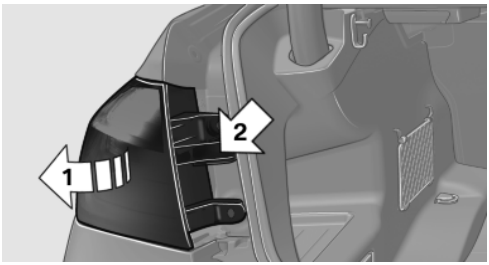
1. Open trunk lid.
2. Use the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit to loosen the screw, arrow 1, and remove the cover, arrow 2.



3. Use the screwdriver handle to loosen the two nuts, arrows 1 and 2, and remove. The tail lamp is still attached to a rubber mount on the outside.



4. Grasp the inner edge of the tail lamp and carefully swing it back and out of the rubber mount, arrow 1. Use your free hand to hold it in place in order to prevent the tail lamp from coming loose suddenly. Make sure that the foam rubber sealing ring is on the centering pin, arrow 2.



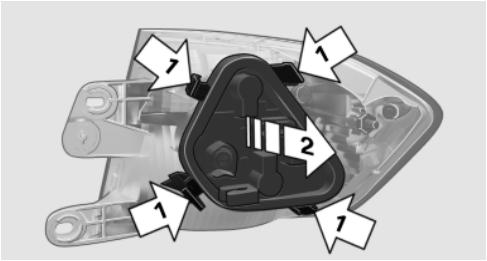
Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

5. Remove the connecting line from the clip on the bulb holder.
6. Release the catch at the top on the connector of the connecting line and remove the connector from the bulb holder.

Replacing the bulbs

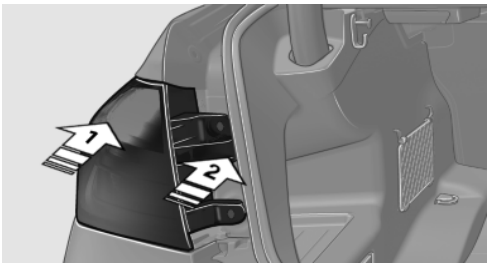
1. Loosen the four fasteners, arrow 1, on the bulb holder and remove the bulb holder from the tail lamp, arrow 2.



2. Press the defective bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
3. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

Installing the tail lamp

1. Connect the connecting line to the tail lamp and secure the bulb holder in the clip.
2. Make sure that the sealing ring is on the centering pin, arrow 2, and is not damaged.
3. Position and firmly press the outer part of the tail lamp onto the rubber mount, arrow 1 and the inner part onto the centering component, arrow 2. Make sure that the tail lamp engages in the rubber mount.



4. Screw the two nuts onto the tail lamp and mount the cover.

Lamps in the trunk lid

General information

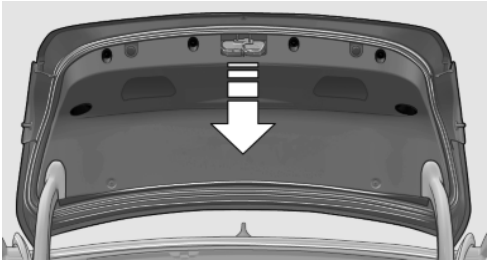
Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

Reversing lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W

Inner brake lamps: 21-watt bulb, H21W

Accessing the lamps

1. Use the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit to loosen and completely remove the six screws on the trim.

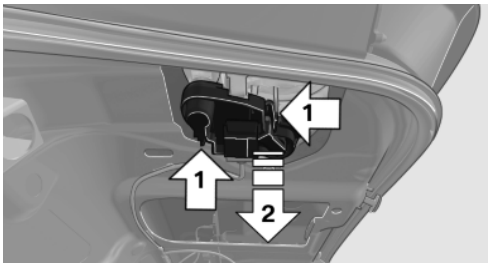


2. Carefully loosen the trim from the trunk lid, starting at the edge and working toward the area around the recessed grips. Make sure that the trim does not become stuck.
3. Carefully swing out the trim.

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Replacing the reversing lamp and inner brake lamp

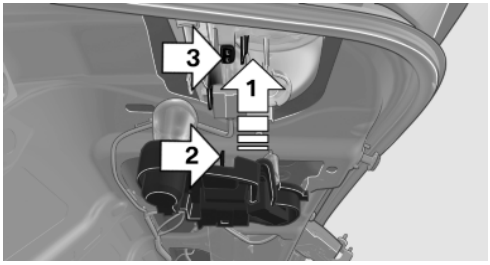
1. Loosen the two fasteners, arrow 1 and pull down on the lamp holder to remove, arrow 2.



2. Press the defective bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
3. Insert the new bulb.

Installing the bulb holder

1. Slide the bulb holder onto the two guide pins, arrow 1. Insert the two contacts, arrow 2, into the connections, arrow 3.



2. Press on the bulb holder. Make sure that the two exterior fasteners latch into place.
3. Swing the trim back onto the trunk lid and secure.

Tail lamp, license plate lamp and central brake lamp

Follow the General instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 279.

The lamps feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Changing wheels

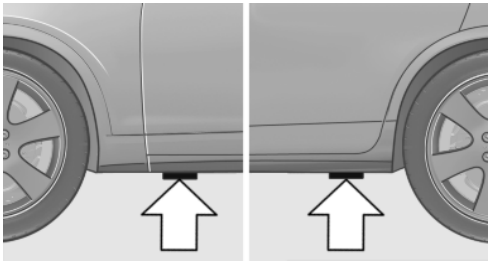
Notes

The vehicle equipment does not include a spare tire.

When using run-flat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.

Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

Battery replacement

Use approved vehicle batteries only

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.◄

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available and that any Check Control messages are no longer displayed.

Charging the battery

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 292, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be reinitialized.

Individual settings need to be reprogrammed:

- Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Radio station: save again.
- Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Notes

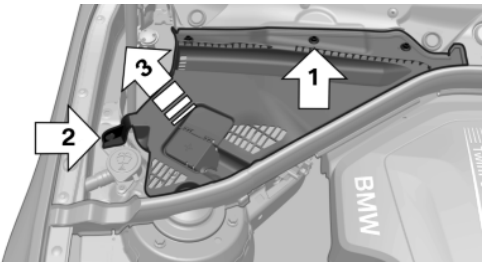
Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◂

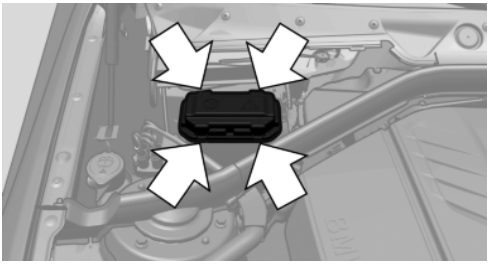
Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the cargo area.

In the engine compartment

1. Use the onboard vehicle toolkit to loosen the three cover screws, arrow 1.

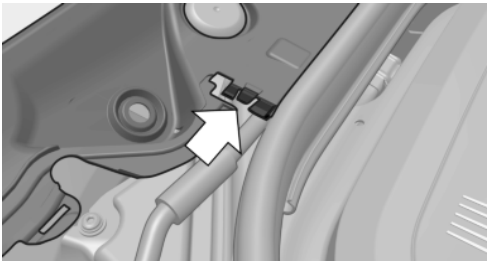


2. Pull up the holder, arrow 2.
3. Remove the cover from one side, arrow 3.
4. Press the four fasteners and remove the cover.



Reattaching the covers

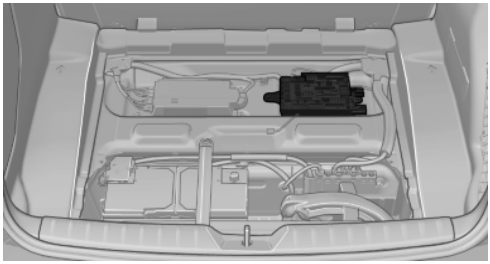
1. When attaching the cover, make sure that all four fasteners are engaged.
2. Attach the cover under the rubber lip and then thread it between the bars.



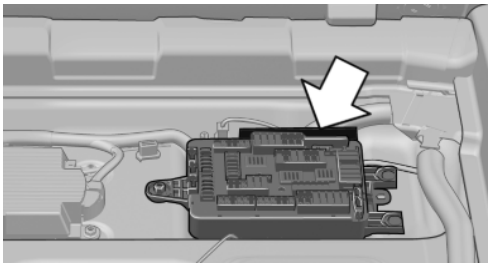
3. Press down on the holder and tighten the three screws.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

In the cargo area



Raise the cargo floor panel.



Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

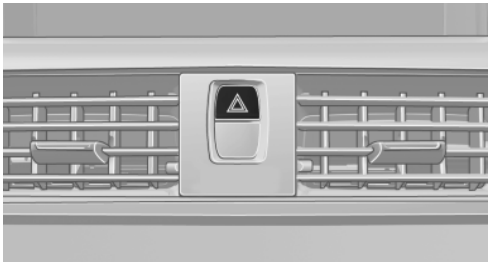
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console.

Emergency Request

Requirements

- Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone.

 An Emergency Request can be made, even if no mobile phones are paired with the vehicle.
- BMW Assist is activated.
- The radio ready state is switched on.
- The BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network supported by BMW Assist.
- The Assist system is functional.

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Emergency Request not guaranteed

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◄

Service contract

- After your contract with BMW Assist has expired, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by the service center without you having to visit a workshop.

 After deactivation, an Emergency Request is no longer possible.
- Under certain circumstances, the system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Initiating an Emergency Request



1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

- The LED lights up: an Emergency Request was initiated.

 If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
- The LED flashes if the connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established.

 After the Emergency Request arrives at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of the vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

▷ If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard on the hands-free system, the hands-free system may be malfunctioning. However, the BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the trunk lid.

To remove, loosen the bracket.

First aid kit



The first aid kit is located in the cargo area in a storage compartment.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance, refer to page 251, phone number can be viewed on the iDrive or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

Jump starting

Notes

If the battery is discharged, an engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running.◄

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

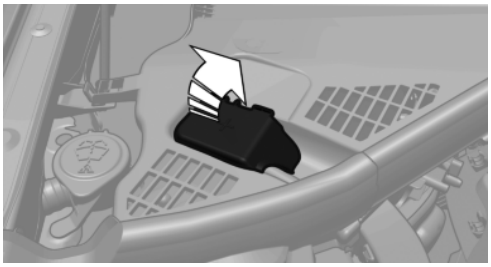
Bodywork contact between vehicles

Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.◄

Starting aid terminals

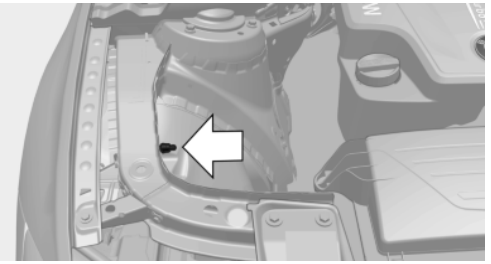
Connecting order

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order; otherwise, there is the danger of injury from sparking.◄



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

1. Open the cover of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the assisting vehicle.
3. Attach the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the other end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle being started in the usual way.

 If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Automatic transmission: transporting your vehicle

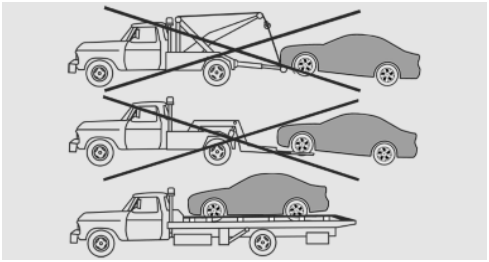
Note

Your vehicle is not permitted to be towed. Therefore, contact a service center in the event of a breakdown.

Do not have the vehicle towed

Have your vehicle transported on a loading platform only; otherwise, damage may occur.◄

Tow truck



Do not lift the vehicle

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◄

Use the tow fitting screwed in at the front for maneuvering the vehicle only.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

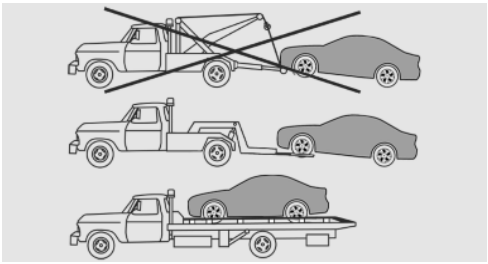
Towing

Follow the towing instructions

Follow all towing instructions; otherwise, vehicle damage or accidents may occur.◄

- Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and windshield wipers may be unavailable.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- Larger steering wheel movements are required.

Tow truck



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

Do not lift the vehicle

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◄

Towing other vehicles

General information

Light towing vehicle

Your vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control vehicle response.◄

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly

Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage.◄

- Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited during cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

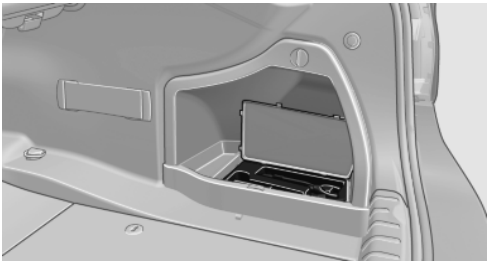
When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

Attaching the tow rope correctly

Only secure the tow rope on the tow fitting; otherwise, damage can occur when it is secured on other parts of the vehicle.◄

Tow fitting



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW. It is in the onboard vehicle tool kit located in a storage compartment on the right side in the cargo area. Open the cover.

Tow fitting, information on use

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◄

Screw thread

Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.

Front



Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Rear



Tow-starting

Automatic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Due to the automatic transmission, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

Have the cause of the starting difficulties remedied.

Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 291. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Ignition, refer to page 59, on.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Care

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Car washes

Notes

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/ 60 °C.

Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◄

Cleaning sensors/cameras with high-pressure washers

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the exterior sensors and cameras, e.g., Park Distance Control, for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 12 in/ 30 cm.◄

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter.

Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Automatic car washes

Notes

Note the following:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 65, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.
- In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 41.

Guide rails in car washes

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged.◄

Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

Manual transmission:

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Drive into the car wash.
3. Shift to neutral.
4. Switch the engine off.
5. Switch on the ignition.

Automatic transmission:

1. Release the parking brake, refer to page 63.
2. Drive into the car wash.
3. Depress the brake pedal as needed.

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

4. Engage transmission position N.
5. Switch the engine off. In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.

 Transmission position P with the ignition off

 When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◂

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in transmission position N.

A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Transmission position

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

- When the ignition is switched off.
- After approx. 15 minutes.

Headlamps

- Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or caustic cleansers.
- Soak areas that have been soiled e.g. due to insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- Thaw ice with deicing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Vehicle care

Car care products

BMW recommends using cleaning and care products from BMW, since these have been tested and approved.

Car care and cleaning products

Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health.◂

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention.

Environmental influences can act on the vehicle paint. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If they are very dirty, e.g., beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Damage from Velcro® fasteners

Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◀

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

Use wheel cleaner, particularly during the winter months. Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline or abrasive cleaners, or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C; follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or reduced noise damping.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

These include:

- Imitation leather surfaces.
- Headliner.
- Lamp lenses.
- Instrument cluster cover.
- Matte black spray-coated components.
- Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Lightly dampen the cloth with water.

Do not soak the headliner.

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage.◀

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Chemical cleaning

Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing.◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Floor carpets and floor mats

No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.◀

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Floor mats can be removed from the passenger compartment for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors/cameras

To clean sensors and cameras, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays/screens

Clean the displays with a microfiber cloth.

Cleaning displays

Do not use chemical or household cleansers.

Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit.

Otherwise, they could affect or damage surfaces or electrical components.

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result.◄

Special feature on the Control Display

If necessary, a microfiber cloth dampened with glass cleaner can also be used for cleaning the Control Display.

Moisten microfiber cloth only slightly

Moisten microfiber cloth only slightly, otherwise, damage may result.◄

Suitable glass cleaners are available from the service center.

Long-term vehicle storage

Your service center can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490



Information Provided by:
DEALER
ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Reference

This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system, and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

Information Provided by: DEALER

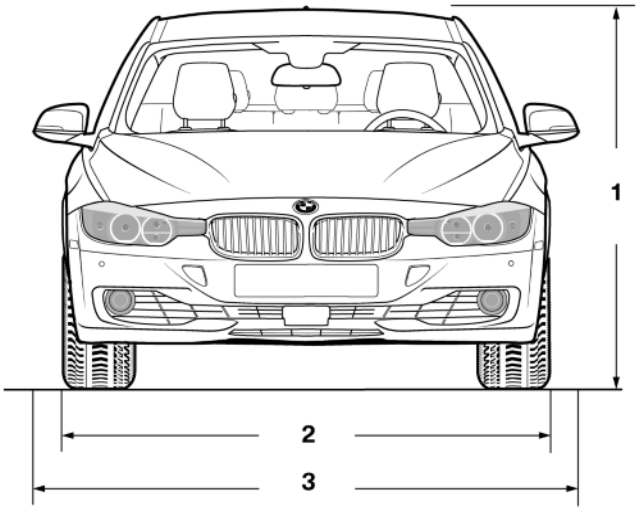
Technical data

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

Dimensions

Width, height



1 Vehicle height without roof-mounted aerial: 56.3 inches/1,430 mm

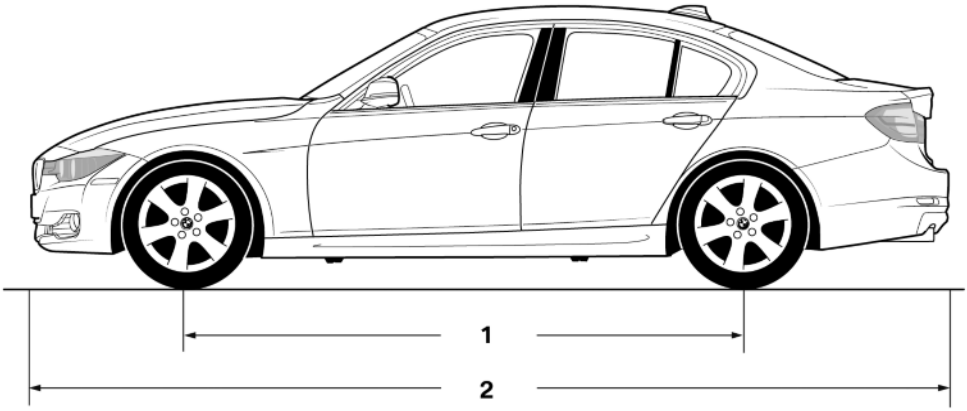
Vehicle height with roof-mounted aerial: 56.7 inches/1,442 mm

2 Vehicle width, without mirrors: 71.3 inches/ 1,811 mm

3 Vehicle width with mirrors: 79.9 inches/ 2,031 mm

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PRICING

Length, wheel base



1 Wheel base: 110.6 inches/2,810 mm

2 Vehicle length: 182 inches/4,624 mm

Smallest turning circle

Dia.: 37 ft/11.3 m

Engine specifications

The rated power outputs are established on the basis of fuel grade AKI 91.

328i		
Displacement	cu in/cm³	121.8/1,997
No. of cylinders		4
Maximum output	hp	245
at engine speed	rpm	5,000–6,500
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	258/350
at engine speed	rpm	1,250–4,800

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

335i		
Displacement	cu in/cm³	181.7/2,979
No. of cylinders		6
Maximum output at engine speed	hp rpm	306 5,800–6,000
Maximum torque at engine speed	lb ft/Nm rpm	295/400 1,200–5,000

Weights

The values preceding the slash apply to vehicles with manual transmission; the values following the slash apply to vehicles with automatic transmission.

328i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs kg	4,409/4,453 2,000/2,020
Load	lbs/kg	903/410
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,061/935
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,513/1,140
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	16.9/480

335i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs kg	4,541/4,563 2,060/2,070
Load	lbs/kg	903/410
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,160/980
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,524/1,145
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	16.9/480

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 15.8/60	Fuel quality, refer to page 262
Windshield and headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 3.1/3	

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Short commands of the voice activation system

Vehicle equipment

All standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series is described in this chapter. Therefore, equipment is also described that is not available in a vehicle, e. g., because of the selected optional equipment or country variant. This also applies for safety-related functions and systems.

General information

Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 23.

To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Adjusting

Vehicle

Function	Command
Open the main menu.	›Main menu‹
Open the options.	›Options‹
Open the settings.	›Settings‹
Info display of the instrument cluster.	›Info Display‹
Settings on the Control Display.	›Control display‹
Open the time and date.	›Time and date‹
Open the language and units.	›Language and units‹
Open the speed limit.	›Speed‹
Open the light.	›Lighting‹
Open the door lock.	›Door locks‹
Open the profiles.	›Profiles‹
Open the Driving Mode menu.	›Driving mode‹
Open the ECO PRO menu.	›ECO PRO mode‹

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Equipment

Function	Command
Open the air conditioning settings.	›Climate‹
Open the Head-up Display.	›head up display‹

Vehicle information

Owner's Manual

Function	Command
Open the Owner's Manual.	›Display Owner's Manual‹
Open the Quick Reference Guide.	›Quick reference‹
Open the index.	›Owner's Manual‹
Open the search by pictures.	›Search by pictures‹

Computer

Function	Command
Call up the onboard computer.	›Onboard info‹
Call up the trip computer.	›Trip computer‹

Vehicle

Function	Command
Open the vehicle information.	›Vehicle info‹
Open the vehicle status.	›Vehicle status‹
Open the hybrid display.	›Hybrid‹
Open sport displays.	›Sport displays‹
Call up ECO PRO tips.	›ECO PRO Tips‹
Open EfficientDynamics menu.	›Efficient Dynamics‹
Split screen hybrid display.	›Splitscreen, Hybrid mode‹
EfficientDynamics split screen.	›Split screen Efficient Dynamics‹

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Opens the Navigation menu.	›Navigation‹
Open the destination entry.	›Enter address‹
Enter the address.	›Enter address‹
Enter a town/city.	›City‹
Enter a state/province.	›State‹
Enter the postal code.	›Postal Code‹
Open destination guidance.	›Guidance‹
Start destination guidance.	›Start guidance‹
Terminate destination guidance.	›Stop guidance‹
Open the home address.	›Home address‹
Open the route criteria.	›Route preference‹
Open the route.	›Route information‹
Turn on spoken instructions.	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeat the spoken instruction.	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Turn off spoken instructions.	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Display the address book.	›Address book‹
Display the most recent destinations.	›Last destinations‹
Open the traffic bulletins.	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations.	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Display the map.	›Map‹
Map facing north.	›Map facing north‹
Map facing the direction of travel.	›Map in direction of travel‹

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Function	Command
Perspective map.	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic scaling of the map.	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Scale...feet.	›Map scale ... feet‹
Scale...meters.	›Map scale ... meters‹ e.g., map scale 100 meters
Scale...kilometers.	›Map scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., map scale 5 kilometers
Scale...miles.	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g., map scale 5 miles

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen.	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switch off the split screen.	›Turn off split screen‹
Adjust the split screen.	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, map facing north.	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, current position.	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen, facing the direction of travel.	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective.	›Split screen perspective‹
Split screen, expanded intersection zoom.	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹
Split screen scale...feet.	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale...meters.	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 meters
Split screen scale...kilometers.	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 kilometers
Split screen scale...miles.	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen, highlight the traffic situation.	›Split screen, Traffic conditions‹
Split screen, computer.	›Split screen on board info‹

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Function	Command
Split screen, trip computer.	›Splitscreen trip computer‹
Split screen, scale automatically.	›Split screen automatic scaling‹

Destination guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
Enter a new destination.	›Enter address‹
Trip list.	›Stored trips‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Open a frequency.	›Frequency ... megahertz‹ e.g., 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5
Open the radio.	›Radio‹
Open the FM stations.	›F M‹
Open the manual search.	›Manual‹
Select a frequency range.	›Select frequency‹
Open a station.	›Select station‹

AM

Function	Command
Open a frequency.	›Frequency ... Kilohertz‹ e.g., frequency 753 or 753 kilohertz
Open the AM stations.	›A M‹
Open the manual search.	›Manual‹

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPRESS

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Open the satellite radio.	›Satellite radio‹
Switch on the satellite radio.	›Satellite radio on‹
Select a satellite radio channel.	›Select satellite radio‹ e.g., satellite radio channel 2

Stored stations

Function	Command
Open the stored stations.	›Presets‹
Choose a stored station.	›Select preset‹
Select a stored station.	›Preset ...‹ e. g., stored station 2

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Select a track.	›Track ...‹ e.g., track 5 or ›C D track ...‹ e.g., CD track 5
Play back a CD.	›C D on‹
Select a CD.	›Select C D‹
Select a CD and track.	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g., CD 3 track 5
Open the CD and Multimedia menus.	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD.	›C D‹
Select a DVD.	›D V D ...‹ e.g. DVD 3
Display the entertainment details on a split screen.	›Entertainment details‹

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Music collection

Function	Command
Search for music, open a menu.	›Music search‹
Open the current playback.	›Current playback‹
Open the music collection.	›Music collection‹
Play back the music collection.	›Music collection on‹
Play back the most frequently played tracks.	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Open the external devices.	›External devices‹
Open the Bluetooth devices.	›Bluetooth‹
AUX at front.	›AUX front‹

Tone

Function	Command
Open the tone settings.	›Tone‹

Telephone

Function	Command
Dial a phone number.	›Dial number‹
Opens the Telephone menu.	›Telephone‹
Display the phone book.	›Phonebook‹
Redialing.	›Redial‹
Display received calls.	›Received calls‹
List of messages.	›Messages‹
Open the Bluetooth devices.	›Bluetooth‹

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Office

Function	Command
Open the Office menu.	›Office‹
Display Office Today.	›Current office‹
Display the contacts.	›Contacts‹
Display the messages.	›Messages‹
Display the calendar.	›Calendar‹
Display the tasks.	›Tasks‹
Display the reminders.	›Reminders‹

Contacts

Function	Command
Select a name.	›Choose name‹
My contacts.	›My contacts‹
Open the contacts.	›Contacts‹
New contact.	›New contact‹

BMW Assist or ConnectedDrive

Function	Command
Open BMW Assist.	›B M W Assist‹
Open ConnectedDrive.	›Connected Drive‹
Open BMW Search.	›B M W Online‹

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 104
ACC, Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go 109
Activated-charcoal filter 139
Active Blind Spot Detection 101
Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, ACC 109
Active Protection 102
Adaptive brake lights, refer to Brake force display 102
Adaptive light control 88
Additional telephone 228
Additives, oil 275
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 45
After washing vehicle 297
Airbags 91
Airbags, indicator/warning light 92
Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 135, 138
Air distribution, manual 135, 138
Air drying, refer to Cooling function 135, 137
Air flow, air conditioner 135
Air pressure, tires 263
Air vents, refer to Ventilation 139
Air volume, automatic climate control 138
Alarm system 40
Alarm, unintentional 41
All around the center console 14
All around the headliner 15
All around the steering wheel 12
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 270
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 142
Alternative oil types 275
AM/FM station 190
Announcement, navigation, refer to Spoken instructions 178
Antifreeze, washer fluid 66
Antilock Brake System, ABS 104
Anti-slip control, refer to DSC 104
Applications 255
Appointments 243
Approved engine oils 275
Apps 255
Apps, video playback 213
Arrival time 82
Ash tray 145
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 291
Assistance when driving off 108
Assist, BMW 250
Assist system information, on Control Display 85
Audio playback 199
Audio playback, Bluetooth 213
AUTO intensity 137
Automatic car wash 296
Automatic climate control 134
Automatic climate control with enhanced features 136
Automatic Cruise Control with Stop & Go 109
Automatic Curb Monitor 52
Automatic deactivation, front passenger airbags 93
Automatic headlamp control 87
Automatic locking 37
Automatic recirculated-air control 138
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 67
AUTO program, automatic climate control 137
AUTO program, climate control 135
AUTO program, intensity 137
Auto Start/Stop function 61
AUX-IN port 210
Average fuel consumption 82
Average speed 82
Axle loads, weights 304

B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support 47
Backrest, width 47
Backup camera 123
Balance 188
Band-Aids, refer to First aid kit 291
Bar for tow-starting/towing 294
Bass 188
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 287
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control 30
Battery, vehicle 287
Belts, safety belts 48
Beverage holder, cupholder 150

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Blinds, sun protection 43
Bluetooth audio 213
Bluetooth connection, activating/deactivating 222, 229
BMW Assist 250
BMW Homepage 6
BMW Internet page 6
BMW Maintenance System 277
BMW Search 252
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder 150
Brake assistant 104
Brake discs, breaking in 156
Brake force display 102
Brake lamps, brake force display 102
Brake lights, adaptive 102
Brake pads, breaking in 156
Braking, notes 157
Breakdown assistance 290, 291
Breaking in 156
Brightness of Control Display 85
Bulb replacement 279
Bulb replacement, front 280
Bulb replacement, halogen headlamps 280
Bulb replacement, rear 285
Bulb replacement, xenon headlamps 283
Bulbs and lamps 279
Button, RES 111
Button, Start/Stop 59
Bypassing, refer to starting aid 291

C

Calendar 243
California Proposition 65 Warning 7
Camera, backup camera 125
Camera, care 299
Camera, Side View 128
Camera, Top View 127
Can holder, refer to Cupholder 150
Car battery 287
Car care products 297
Care, displays 299
Care, vehicle 297
Cargo 159
Cargo area, enlarging 146
Cargo area lid 37
Cargo area, storage compartments 151
Cargo straps, securing cargo 160
Car key, refer to Remote control 30
Carpet, care 298
Car wash 296
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 156
CBS Condition Based Service 277
CD/DVD 198
CDs, storing 205
Cell phone 220, 228
Center armrest 149
Center console 14
Central locking system 33
Central screen, refer to Control Display 16
Changes, technical, refer to Safety 6
Changing parts 279
Changing wheels 287
Changing wheels/tires 269
Check Control 73
Children, seating position 55
Children, transporting safely 55
Child restraint fixing system 55
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 56
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 55
Child safety locks 58
Child seat, mounting 55
Child seats 55
Chrome parts, care 298
Cigarette lighter 145
Cleaning, displays 299
Climate control 134, 136
Clock 76
Closing/opening from inside 37
Closing/opening via door lock 36
Closing/opening with remote control 34
Clothes hooks 151
Collision warning 115, 117
Combination switch, refer to Turn signals 64
Combination switch, refer to Wiper system 65
Comfort Access 38
COMFORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 107
Compartments in the doors 149
Compass 143
Computer 81
Concierge service 251
Condensation on windows 138
Condensation under the vehicle 158
Condition Based Service CBS 277
Confirmation signal 35
Contacts 239, 0
Control Display 16
Control Display, settings 83
Controller 16, 17
Control systems, driving stability 104
Convenient opening 34
Coolant 276
Coolant temperature 76
Cooling function 135, 137
Cooling, maximum 137
Cooling system 276

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Corrosion on brake discs 158
Cruise control 119
Cruise control, active with Stop & Go 109
Cruising range 76
Cupholder 150
Current fuel consumption 77
Current location, storing 170
Customer Relations 253

D

Damage, tires 269
Damping control, dynamic 105
Data, technical 302
Date 76
Daytime running lights 87
Defrosting, refer to defrosting the windows 135
Defrosting, refer to Windows, defrosting 138
Defrosting the windows 135
Destination distance 82
Destination guidance 176
Destination guidance with intermediate destinations 174
Destination input, navigation 168
Digital clock 76
Digital compass 143
Digital radio 191
Dimensions 302
Dimmable exterior mirrors 53
Dimmable interior rearview mirror 53
Direction indicator, refer to Turn signals 64
Displacement, engine 303
Display, ECO PRO 163
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 72
Display in front windshield 128
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 89
Displays 70
Displays, cleaning 299
Disposal, coolant 276
Disposal, vehicle battery 288
Distance control, refer to PDC 121
Distance, selecting for ACC 111
Distance to destination 82
Divided screen view, split screen 21
Door lock, refer to Remote control 30
Drive-off assistant 108
Drive-off assistant, refer to DSC 104
Driving Experience Switch 106
Driving instructions, breaking in 156
Driving notes, general 156
Driving stability control systems 104
Driving tips 156
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 104
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 105
DVD/CD 198
DVD/CD notes 204
DVD changer 202
DVD settings 201
DVDs, storing 205
DVD, video 200
Dynamic Damping Control 105
Dynamic destination guidance 183
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 104
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 105

E

ECO PRO 163
EfficientDynamics 164
EfficientDynamics menu, refer to ECO PRO 163
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 72
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to DSC 104
Emergency detection, remote control 31
Emergency release, door lock 37
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 260
Emergency Request 290
Emergency service, refer to Roadside Assistance 291
Emergency start function, engine start 31
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 38
Energy Control 77
Energy recovery 77
Engine, automatic start/stop function 61
Engine, automatic switch-off 61
Engine compartment 272
Engine compartment, working in 273
Engine coolant 276
Engine oil 274
Engine oil, adding 274
Engine oil additives 275
Engine oil change 275
Engine oil filler neck 274
Engine oil temperature 75
Engine oil types, alternative 275
Engine oil types, approved 275
Engine specifications 303
Engine start during malfunction 31
Engine start, refer to Starting the engine 60
Engine start, Starting aid 291

Information Provided by: DEALER ELECTRONICS
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Engine stop 61
Engine temperature 75
Entering a car wash 296
Equalizer 188
Equipment, interior 141
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC 104
Exchanging wheels/tires 269
Exhaust system 156
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 53
Exterior mirrors 52
External devices 210
External start 291
External temperature display 76
External temperature warning 76
Eyes for securing cargo 160

F

Fader 188
Failure message, refer to Check Control 73
False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm 41
Fan, refer to Air flow 135
Fan, refer to Air volume 138
Fault displays, refer to Check Control 73
Filler neck for engine oil 274
Fine wood, care 298
First aid kit 291
Fitting for towing, refer to Tow fitting 294
Flat tire, changing wheels 287
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 97
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 94
Flat tire, warning lamp 95, 98
Flooding 157
Floor carpet, care 298
Floor mats, care 298
FM/AM station 190
Fogged up windows 135
Fold-out position, windshield wipers 66
Foot brake 157
Front airbags 91
Front fog lamps 89
Front fog lamps, front, bulb replacement 284
Front lamps 280
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 93
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp 93
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 97
Fuel cap 260
Fuel consumption, current 77
Fuel consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 82
Fuel filler flap 260
Fuel gauge 75
Fuel quality 262
Fuel, tank capacity 305
Fuse 288

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 141
Gas station recommendation 178
Gear change, automatic transmission 67
Gear shift indicator 78
General driving notes 156
Glass sunroof, powered 43
Glove compartment 148
Gong, volume equalization 189
GPS navigation 168
Gray display of the map 181
Gross vehicle weight, approved 304
Gross weight, permissible for trailer towing 304

H

Handbrake, refer to parking brake 63
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 142
Hazard warning flashers 290
HD Radio 191
Head airbags 91
Headlamp control, automatic 87
Headlamp courtesy delay feature 87
Headlamp flasher 64
Headlamp glass 280
Headlamps 280
Headlamps, care 297
Headlamp washer system 65
Headliner 15
Head restraints 45
Head restraints, front 49
Head restraints, rear 50
Head-up Display 128
Head-up Display, care 299
Heavy cargo, stowing 160
Height, vehicle 302
High-beam Assistant 88
High beams 64
High beams/low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant 88
Hills 158
Hill start assistant, refer to Drive-off assistant 108
Hints 6
Holder for beverages 150
Homepage 6
Hood 273
Horn 12
Hotel function, trunk lid 38
Hot exhaust system 156
House number, entering for navigation 169
Hydroplaning 157

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

I

Ice warning, refer to External temperature warning 76
Icy roads, refer to External temperature warning 76
Identification marks, tires 267
Identification number, refer to Important features in the engine compartment 272
iDrive 16
Ignition key, refer to Remote control 30
Ignition off 59
Ignition on 59
Indication of a flat tire 95, 98
Individual air distribution 135, 138
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 31
Inflation pressure, tires 263
Inflation pressure warning FTM, tires 97
Info display, refer to Computer 81
Information on the navigation data 183
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 98
Initializing, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 95
Instrument cluster 70
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 72
Instrument lighting 89
Integrated key 30
Integrated universal remote control 141
Intensity, AUTO program 137
Interactive map 173
Interior equipment 141
Interior lamps 90
Interior lamps via remote control 35
Interior motion sensor 41
Interior rearview mirror 53
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 53
Interior rearview mirror, compass 143
Intermediate destinations 175
Internet page 6
Intersection, entering for navigation 169
Interval display, service requirements 77
iPod/iPhone 210

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 287
Jack, refer to Vehicle jack 287
Joystick, automatic transmission 67

K

Key/remote control 30
Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access 38
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 31
Kickdown, automatic transmission 67
Knee airbag 91

L

Lamp replacement 279
Lamp replacement, front 280
Lamp replacement, rear 285
Lamps 86
Lamps and bulbs 279
Lane departure warning 99
Lane margin, warning 99
Language on Control Display 84
Lashing eyes, securing cargo 160
LATCH child restraint fixing system 56
Leather, care 297
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 280
Length, vehicle 303
Letters and numbers, entering 22
Light-alloy wheels, care 298
Light control 88
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 280
Lighter 145
Lighting 86
Lighting via remote control 35
Light switch 86
Load 159
Loading 159
Lock, door 36
Locking/unlocking from inside 37
Locking/unlocking via door lock 36
Locking/unlocking with remote control 34
Locking, automatic 37
Locking, central 33
Lock, power window 42
Locks, doors, and windows 58
Low beams 86
Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam Assistant 88
Lower back support 47
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 160
Lumbar support 47

M

Maintenance 277
Maintenance requirements 277
Maintenance, service requirements 77
Maintenance system, BMW 277

Information Provided by: DEALER E-CATALOGS

Malfunction displays, refer to Check Control 73
Manual air distribution 135, 138
Manual air flow 135
Manual air volume 138
Manual mode, transmission 68
Manual operation, backup camera 124
Manual operation, door lock 37
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 52
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 260
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 122
Manual operation, Side View 128
Manual operation, Top View 126
Manual transmission 67
Map, destination entry 173
Map in split screen 180
Map view 178
Marking on approved tires 270
Marking, run-flat tires 271
Master key, refer to Remote control 30
Maximum cooling 137
Maximum speed, display 79
Maximum speed, winter tires 270
Measure, units of 85
Medical kit 291
Memory, seat, mirror 51
Menu, EfficientDynamics 164
Menu in instrument cluster 80
Menus, operating, iDrive 16
Menus, refer to iDrive operating concept 18
Message list, traffic bulletins 180
Messages 241
Messages, refer to Check Control 73
Microfilter 136, 139
Minimum tread, tires 269
Mirror 52
Mirror memory 51
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 157
Mobile phone 220, 228
Mode, ECO PRO 163
Modifications, technical, refer to Safety 6
Moisture in headlamp 280
Monitor, refer to Control Display 16
Mounting of child restraint fixing systems 55
MP3 player 210
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 12
Music collection 205
Music search 207
Music, storing 205

N

Navigation 168
Navigation data 183
Neck restraints, front, refer to Head restraints 49
Neck restraints, rear, refer to Head restraints 50
New wheels and tires 269
No Passing Information 79
Notes 245
Number of cylinders, engine 303
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 294

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics 278
Obstacle marking, backup camera 125
Odometer 76
Office 238
Oil 274
Oil, adding 274
Oil additives 275
Oil change 275
Oil change interval, service requirements 77
Oil filler neck 274
Oil types, alternative 275
Oil types, approved 275
Old batteries, disposal 288
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 278
Onboard monitor, refer to Control Display 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 279
Opening/closing from inside 37
Opening/closing via door lock 36
Opening/closing with remote control 34
Operating concept, iDrive 16
Optional equipment, standard equipment 6
Outside air, refer to Automatic recirculated-air control 138
Overheating of engine, refer to Coolant temperature 76

P

Paint, vehicle 297
Pairing, mobile phone 220, 229
Panic mode 35
Parallel parking assistant 130
Park Distance Control PDC 121
Parked-car ventilation 139
Parked vehicle, condensation 158
Parking aid, refer to PDC 121
Parking assistant 130
Parking brake 63

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Parking lamps 86
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward 52
Pathway lines, backup camera 124
PDC Park Distance Control 121
Permissible axle load 304
Personal information 238
Personal Profile 31
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 43
Pinch protection system, windows 42
Plastic, care 298
PlugIn 255
Position, storing 170
Postal code, entering in navigation 169
Power failure 288
Power output, engine 303
Power sunroof, glass 43
Power windows 41
Pressure, tire air pressure 263
Pressure warning FTM, tires 97
Profile, refer to Personal Profile 31
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 21
Protective function, glass sunroof 43
Protective function, windows 42
Push-and-turn switch, refer to Controller 16, 17

R

Radiator fluid 276
Radio 190, 198
Radio-operated key, refer to Remote control 30
Radio ready state 60
Radio stations buttons 197
Rain sensor 65
Random 199
Random playback 199
RDS 191
Reading out loud 245
Rear lamps 285
Rear socket 146
Rearview mirror 52
Rear window defroster 135, 138
Recirculated-air filter 139
Recirculated air filter 136
Recirculated-air mode 135, 138
Recommended tire brands 270
Refueling 260
Remaining range 76
Reminders 245
Remote control/key 30
Remote control, malfunction 36
Remote control, universal 141
Replacement fuse 288
Replacing parts 279
Replacing wheels/tires 269
Reporting safety defects 8
RES button 111
Reserve warning, refer to Range 76
Resetting, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 95
Retaining straps, securing cargo 160
Retreaded tires 270
Roadside Assistance 251
Roadside parking lamps 87
Roller sunblinds 43
Roof load capacity 304
Roof-mounted luggage rack 160
Rope for tow-starting/towing 294
Route 177
Route criteria, route 176
Route, displaying 177
Routes, avoiding 176
Route section, bypassing 177
RPM, engine 303
RSC Run Flat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 271
Rubber components, care 298
Run-flat tires 271

S

Safe braking 157
Safety 6
Safety belt reminder 49
Safety belts 48
Safety belts, care 298
Safety Package, refer to Active Protection 102
Safety switch, windows 42
Safety systems, airbags 91
Satellite radio 192
Saving fuel 162
Scale, changing during navigation 179
Screen, refer to Control Display 16
Screwdriver 279
Screw thread for tow fitting 294
Search, refer to BMW Search 252
Seat and mirror memory 51
Seat belts, refer to Safety belts 48
Seat heating, front 47
Seat heating, rear 48
Seating position for children 55
Seats 45
Selection list in instrument cluster 80
Selector lever, automatic transmission 67
Sensors, care 299
Service and warranty 7

Information Provided by: DEALER CONNECTION

Service history 78
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 277
Service requirements, display 77
Service, Roadside Assistance 291
Settings on Control Display 83
Settings, storing for seat, mirror 51
Shifting, automatic transmission 67
Shifting, manual transmission 67
Shift paddles on steering wheel 69
Short commands 306
Side airbags 91
Side View 127
Signaling, horn 12
Signals when unlocking 35
Sitting safely 45
Size 302
Slide/tilt glass roof 43
Smallest turning circle 303
Snap-in adapter, mobile phone 236
Snow chains 271
Socket 145
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 278
Software applications, iPhone 255
Software update 217
Spare fuse 288
Special destinations, navigation 171
Specified engine oil types 275
Speed, average 82
Speed limit detection 79
Speed limit detection, computer 82
Speed limit, setting 82
Speed Volume, volume equalization 189
Split screen 21
Split screen map settings 180
Spoken instructions, navigation 178
SPORT+ - program, Dynamic Driving Control 106
Sport automatic transmission 69
Sport displays, torque display, performance display 83
SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 106
Sport program, transmission 68
Sport steering, variable 105
Stability control systems 104
Start/stop, automatic function 61
Start/Stop button 59
Start function during malfunction 31
Starting aid 291
Starting the engine 60
State/province, selecting for navigation 168
Stations, stored 197
Station, storing 190
Status display, tires 94
Status information, iDrive 20
Status of Owner's Manual 6
Steering wheel, adjusting 53
Steering wheel heating 53
Steptronic, automatic transmission 67
Stopping the engine 61
Storage compartment in the rear 150
Storage compartments 148
Storage compartments, locations 148
Storage, tires 270
Storing the vehicle 299
Street, entering for navigation 169
Summer tires, tread 268
Supplementary text message 75
Surround View 123
Switch-on times, parked-car ventilation 140
Switch, refer to Cockpit 12
Symbols 6

T

Tachometer 75
Tailgate 37
Tailgate, opening with no-touch activation 39
Tailgate via remote control 35
Tail lamps 285
Tasks 244
Technical changes, refer to Safety 6
Technical data 302
Telephone 220, 228
TeleService 251
Temperature, automatic climate control 135, 137
Temperature display, external temperature 76
Temperature, engine oil 75
Tempomat, refer to Active Cruise Control 109
Terminal, jump-starting 292
Text messages 241
Text message, supplementary 75
Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 40
Theft protection, refer to Central locking system 33
Thigh support 47
Through-loading system 146
Tilt alarm sensor 41
Time of arrival 82
Tire damage 269
Tire identification marks 267
Tire inflation pressure 263

Information Provided by: DEALER EXPERT

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 97
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 94
Tires, changing 269
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 263
Tires, run-flat tires 271
Tire tread 268
Toll roads, route 176
Tone 188
Tools 279
Top View 126
Torque, engine 303
Total vehicle weight 304
Tow fitting 294
Towing 293
Town/city, navigation 169
Tow-starting 293
Tow truck 293
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 94
Traction control 105
TRACTION program, Dynamic Driving Control 105
Traffic bulletins, navigation 180
Transmission, automatic 67
Transmission, manual 67
Transporting children safely 55
Tread, tires 268
Treble, tone 188
Trip computer 83
Triple turn signal activation 64
Trip odometer 76
Truck for tow-starting/towing 293
Trunk lid 37
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 38
Trunk lid, hotel function 38
Trunk lid, opening with no-touch activation 39
Trunk lid via remote control 35
Turning circle 303
Turning circle lines, backup camera 124
Turn signals, operation 64
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 285

U

Unintentional alarm 41
Units of measure 85
Universal remote control 141
Unlock button, automatic transmission 68
Unlocking/locking from inside 37
Unlocking/locking via door lock 36
Unlocking/locking with remote control 34
Updates made after the editorial deadline 6
Updating software 217
Upholstery care 298
USB audio interface 210
USB interface 149

V

Variable sport steering 105
Vehicle battery 287
Vehicle battery, replacing 287
Vehicle, breaking in 156
Vehicle care 297
Vehicle equipment 6
Vehicle identification number, refer to Identification number in the engine compartment 272
Vehicle jack 287
Vehicle paint 297
Vehicle storage 299
Vehicle wash 296
Ventilation 139
Ventilation, refer to Parked-car ventilation 139
Version of the navigation data 183
Video playback 200
Video playback, iPhone 213
Video playback, snap-in adapter 213
Voice activation, short commands 306
Voice activation system 23
Volume, setting 188

W

Warning messages, refer to Check Control 73
Warning triangle 291
Washer fluid 66
Washer fluid reservoir, capacity 305
Washer nozzles, windshield 66
Washer system 65
Washing, vehicle 296
Water on roads 157
Weights 304
Welcome lamps 86
Wheel base, vehicle 303
Wheels, changing 269
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 263
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 97
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 94
Width, vehicle 302
Window defroster, rear 135, 138
Windows, powered 41
Windshield washer fluid 66
Windshield washer nozzles 66
Windshield washer system 65
Windshield wiper 65

Information Provided by: DEALER E-SERVICES
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Windshield wipers, fold-out position 66
Winter storage, care 299
Winter tires, suitable tires 270
Winter tires, tread 268
Wiper blades, replacing 279
Wiper fluid 66
Wiper system 65
Wood, care 298
Word match concept, navigation 22
Wrench 279

X

Xenon headlamps, bulb replacement 283

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490

Information Provided by:
DEALER e-PROCESS

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate Driving Machine

01 40 2 608 633 ue

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 608 633 - 11 09 490